



.....  
***Disc Drive SCSI-2 Interface***  
.....

***Family Models:***  
.....

***ST11200, ST12400, ST12400 Wide,***  
.....

***ST3600, ST3610,***  
.....

***ST31200, ST31200 Wide,***  
.....

***ST3655, ST11950, ST11950 Wide,***  
.....

***ST12450 Wide, ST12550,***  
.....

***ST12550 Wide, ST15150,***  
.....

***ST15150 Wide***  
.....

***Product Manual***  
.....

***Volume 2; Version 2***  
.....



**Seagate Disc Drive  
SCSI-2 Interface  
Family Models:  
ST11200N/ND/NC, ST12400N/ND/NC  
ST12400 Wide, ST3600N  
ST3610N/ND/NC  
ST31200N/ND/NC, ST31200 Wide  
ST3655N, ST11950N/ND,  
ST12450 Wide, ST12550N/ND  
ST11950 Wide, ST12550 Wide  
ST15150N/ND, ST15150 Wide**

**Product Manual  
(Volume 2; Version 2)**

**Publication Number: 77738479-C  
19 October 1993**



## **Copyright Notice**

© 1993 Seagate Technology, Inc. All rights reserved  
Publication Number: 77738479, Rev C

Seagate®, Seagate Technology®, Wren® and the Seagate logo are registered trademarks of Seagate Technology, Inc. SeaFAX™, SeaFONE™, SeaTDD™ and SeaBOARD™ are trademarks of Seagate Technology, Inc. Other product names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their owners.

Seagate reserves the right to change, without notice, product offerings or specifications. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form without written permission of Seagate Technology, Inc.

---

**Revision Status Summary Sheet**

<b>Revision</b>	<b>Authority</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Writer/Eng.</b>	<b>Sheets Affected</b>
A Issue		12/18/92	D. Ashby/J. Averyt	1/1, 1 thru 257.
B	PLD:83345	8/18/93		1/1, 1 thru 4, 4.1, 5 thru 193 deleted shs 194 thru 257. Technical changes on pages 5, 9, 10, 78, 93, 94, 104 - 107, 109, 136, 139 - 142, 144, 147, 149, 161 - 164, 166, 167, 181, 185 thru 193.
C	PLD: 83534			1/1, Revised sheets v thru ix, 1 thru 193. (Technical changes on pages v, vii, 1, 4, 5, 7, 8, 47, 70, 73, 78, 79, 83, 84, 86, 87, 90, 91, 93, 94, 104, 105, 107, 112, 114, 119, 123-131, 136-144, 147-156, 158-160, 162- 170, 176, 178-180, 184, 185, 189 192 and 193).

---

**Table of contents**

<b>1.0</b>	<b>Interface requirements .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	How to use this interface manual .....	1
1.2	General interface description .....	3
1.3	Physical interface characteristics .....	3
1.4	Summary of SCSI commands and messages .....	4
<b>2.0</b>	<b>SCSI bus .....</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1	SCSI bus signals .....	8
2.1.1	Drive select .....	9
2.1.2	Signal values .....	9
2.1.3	OR-Tied signals .....	9
2.1.4	Signal sources .....	9
2.2	SCSI bus timing .....	10
2.2.1	Arbitration delay .....	10
2.2.2	Assertion period .....	10
2.2.3	Bus Clear delay .....	11
2.2.4	Bus Free delay .....	11
2.2.5	Bus Set delay .....	11
2.2.6	Bus Settle delay .....	11
2.2.7	Cable Skew delay .....	11
2.2.8	Data Release delay .....	11
2.2.9	Deskew delay .....	11
2.2.10	Disconnection delay .....	11
2.2.11	Hold time .....	11
2.2.12	Negation period .....	11
2.2.13	Reset Hold time .....	12
2.2.14	Selection Abort time .....	12
2.2.15	Selection Timeout delay .....	12
2.2.16	Transfer Period(negotiated by SDTR message) .....	12
2.3	Fast synchronous transfer option timing .....	12
2.3.1	Fast Assertion period .....	12
2.3.2	Fast Cable Skew delay .....	12
2.3.3	Fast Deskew delay .....	12
2.3.4	Fast Hold time .....	12
2.3.5	Fast Negation period .....	12
<b>3.0</b>	<b>Logical characteristics .....</b>	<b>13</b>
3.1	SCSI bus phases .....	13
3.1.1	Bus Free phase .....	13
3.1.2	Arbitration phase .....	14
3.1.3	Selection phase .....	14
3.1.4	Reselection phase .....	16
3.1.5	Information Transfer phases .....	17
3.1.6	Command phase .....	19
3.1.7	Data phase .....	19
3.1.8	Status phase .....	19
3.1.9	Message phase .....	20
3.1.10	Signal Restrictions Between phases.....	20

## Table of contents

3.2	SCSI bus conditions .....	21
3.2.1	Attention conditions (see Unit Attention Condition, 4.6) .....	21
3.2.2	Reset condition .....	22
3.2.3	Contingent Allegiance condition .....	22
3.3	SCSI bus phase sequences .....	22
3.3.1	Nonarbitrating system .....	22
3.3.2	Arbitrating systems .....	22
3.3.3	All systems .....	23
3.4	SCSI pointers .....	24
3.4.1	Current pointers .....	25
3.4.2	Saved pointers .....	25
3.5	Message system specification .....	25
3.5.1	General message protocol .....	26
3.5.2	Messages - general .....	26
3.5.3	Message details .....	28
3.5.3.1	One and Two Byte message .....	28
3.5.3.2	Extended message ..... (01h) .....	35
<b>4.0</b>	<b>SCSI commands .....</b>	<b>43</b>
4.1	Command implementation requirements .....	43
4.1.1	Reserved .....	43
4.2	Command descriptor block (CDB) .....	43
4.2.1	Operation code .....	44
4.2.2	Logical Unit Number (LUN) .....	45
4.2.3	Logical Block Address .....	46
4.2.4	Relative Address Bit .....	46
4.2.5	Transfer Length .....	46
4.2.6	Control Byte .....	47
4.3	Status .....	47
4.4	Command examples .....	49
4.4.1	Single Command example .....	49
4.4.2	Disconnect example .....	51
4.5	Timing examples .....	53
4.6	Unit attention condition .....	68
4.7	Queued I/O processes .....	69
4.7.1	Untagged queuing .....	69
4.7.2	Tagged queuing .....	69
4.8	Parameter Rounding .....	71
<b>5.0</b>	<b>Command descriptions .....</b>	<b>73</b>
5.1	Command descriptions for all device types .....	73
5.1.1	Group 0 commands for all device types .....	73
5.1.1.1	Test Unit Ready ..... 00h .....	73
5.1.1.2	Request Sense command ..... (03h) .....	74
5.1.1.2.1	Deferred errors .....	82
5.1.1.3	Inquiry command ..... (12h) .....	83
5.1.1.3.1	Vital product data pages .....	87
5.1.1.4	Copy command ..... (18h) .....	95
5.1.1.5	Receive Diagnostic results command ..... (1Ch) .....	95
5.1.1.6	Send Diagnostic command ..... (1Dh) .....	100

### Table of contents

5.1.2	Group 1 commands for all device types .....	103
5.1.2.1	Compare command .....	(39h) ..... 103
5.1.2.2	Copy and verify command .....	(3Ah) ..... 103
5.1.2.3	Write Data Buffer command .....	(3Bh) ..... 103
	5.1.2.3.1 Combined Header and Data Mode .....	(000b) ..... 104
	5.1.2.3.2 Write Data Only .....	105
	5.1.2.3.3 Download & Save Microcode Mode .....	(101b) ..... 105
5.1.2.4	Read Data Buffer command .....	(3Ch) ..... 106
	5.1.2.4.1 Read Combined Descriptor Header and Data Mode .....	(000b) ..... 106
	5.1.2.4.2 Read data .....	107
	5.1.2.4.3 Descriptor mode .....	(011b) ..... 107
5.1.3	Group 2 Commands for All Device Types .....	108
5.1.3.1	Change Definition command .....	(40h) ..... 108
5.1.3.2	Log Select command .....	(4Ch) ..... 110
	5.1.3.2.1 Write, Read and Verify Error Counter pages (code 02, 03, 05h) .....	116
	5.1.3.2.2 Non-Medium Error page .....	(code 06h) 118
	5.1.3.2.3 Cache Statistics page .....	(code 37h) 118
5.1.3.3	Log Sense command .....	(4Dh) ..... 119
5.1.3.4	Other Group 2 commands .....	121
5.1.4	Groups 3 through 5 commands for all device types .....	121
5.1.5	Group 6 commands for all device types .....	121
5.1.6	Group 7 commands for all device types .....	121
5.2	Command descriptions for direct access devices .....	121
5.2.1	Group 0 commands for direct access devices .....	121
5.2.1.1	Rezero Unit command .....	(01h) ..... 122
5.2.1.2	Format Unit command .....	(04h) ..... 122
5.2.1.3	Reassign Blocks command .....	(07h) ..... 130
5.2.1.4	Read command .....	(08h) ..... 132
5.2.1.5	Write command .....	(0Ah) ..... 134
5.2.1.6	Seek command .....	(0Bh) ..... 135
5.2.1.7	Mode Select (6) command .....	(15h) ..... 136
5.2.1.8	Reserve command .....	(16h) ..... 140
5.2.1.9	Release command .....	(17h) ..... 142
5.2.1.10	Mode Sense (6) command .....	(1Ah) ..... 143
5.2.1.11	Start Stop Unit command .....	(1Bh) ..... 169
5.2.1.12	Prevent/Allow Medium Removal command .....	(1Eh) ..... 170
5.2.2	Group 1 command for direct access devices .....	170
5.2.2.1	Read Capacity command .....	(25h) ..... 170
5.2.2.2	Read Extended command .....	(28h) ..... 172
5.2.2.3	Write Extended command .....	(2Ah) ..... 174
5.2.2.4	Seek Extended command .....	(2Bh) ..... 175
5.2.2.5	Write and Verify command .....	(2Eh) ..... 176
5.2.2.6	Verify command .....	(2Fh) ..... 177
5.2.2.7	Synchronize Cache command .....	(35h) ..... 178
5.2.2.8	Read Defect Data command .....	(37h) ..... 179



---

**Table of contents**

5.2.2.9	Read Long command .....	(3Eh) .....	181
5.2.2.10	Write Long command .....	(3Fh) .....	182
5.2.2.11	Reserve (10) command .....	(56h) .....	184
5.2.2.12	Release (10) command .....	(57h) .....	185
5.2.2.13	Mode Select (10) command .....	(55h) .....	186
5.2.2.14	Mode Sense (10) command .....	(5Ah) .....	186
<b>6.0</b>	<b>Error recovery philosophy .....</b>		<b>187</b>
6.1	Seek errors .....		188
6.2	Data field write fault .....		188
6.3	Sync byte error .....		188
6.4	Data field ECC error .....		188
6.5	Alternate sector processing .....		189
<b>7.0</b>	<b>Technical Support Service .....</b>		<b>191</b>
	<b>Seagate Peripheral Family .....</b>		<b>193</b>



## 1.0 Interface requirements

### 1.1 How to use this interface manual

This specification is designed to provide a universal detailed description of the SCSI interface for those disc drive products whose Product Manuals (Volume 1) do not contain the details of how the SCSI interface is implemented by that drive.

**Note: Volume 1 Product Manuals have tables in Section 11 that specify which SCSI-1 or SCSI-2 features they implement, what the default parameters are for the various features they implement and which parameters are changeable and which are not.**

No attempt is made in this universal specification to specify which descriptions or tables apply to SCSI-1 and which to SCSI-2. The combination of this general specification with the details in the Section 11 tables of the individual drive Product Manual provides a description of the individual drive implementation of the SCSI interface. For example, Table 11.2-1 in the ST11200 Product Manual shows that Queue Tag Messages do not apply to the SCSI-1 interface. Therefore, it should be deduced that any reference to Queue Tag messages in this specification does not apply to a drive operating in SCSI-1 mode and should be ignored if SCSI-1 features are the reason for referencing this specification. Also, the ST11200N Product Manual has separate tables listing the default and changeable/non-changeable Mode Sense parameters for the SCSI-1 and SCSI-2 modes. Its table 11.3.2-1a (SCSI-1 implementation) does not list any parameters for pages 07, 08, 0A, and 20. Therefore, the tables in this manual for those Mode Sense pages should be ignored if the SCSI-1 implementation is the present interest. Table 11.3.2-1b of the ST11200N manual shows the SCSI-2 implementation parameters.

This interface manual is not intended to be stand-alone text on SCSI-1 or SCSI-2 features. Reference must be made back to the individual drive Product Manuals to find out what are SCSI-1 and what are SCSI-2 features.

This specification is Volume 2 of a set of manuals that is made up of separate drive Product Manuals (Volume 1) and this manual. This Volume 2 Manual is referenced by other Volume 1 Product Manuals representing the drives listed below.

Product Manuals for the following models reference this volume: ST11200N/ND/NC, ST1980N/ND/NC, ST1830N, ST1950N, ST3500N, ST3600N, ST3610N/ND/NC, ST12400N/ND/NC, ST12400 Wide, ST11900N/ND/NC, ST31200N/ND/NC, ST31200 Wide, ST11950N/ND, ST11950W/WD, ST12450W/WD, ST12550N/ND, ST12550W/WD, ST15150N/ND, ST15150W/WD, ST3655N, ST3550W, ST3390N and ST3285N.

### 1.2 General interface description

This Product Manual describes the Seagate Technology, Inc. subset of the SCSI (Small Computer Systems Interface) as implemented on the Seagate Oklahoma City built disc drives. The interface is compatible with the SCSI Interface Specifications of the ANSI SCSI-1 standard, the ANSI SCSI-2 Standard and the common command set (CCS) document, Revision 4.B. The disc drives covered by this Product Manual are classified as "Intelligent" peripherals.

The Seagate SCSI interface described herein consists of a 9 or 18 bit bidirectional bus (8 data + 1 parity or 16 data + 2 parity) plus 9 control signals supporting multiple initiators, disconnect/ reconnect, self configuring host software, automatic features that relieve the host from the necessity of knowing the physical architecture of the target (logical block addressing is used), and some other miscellaneous features.

The SCSI physical interface uses either single ended or differential drivers and receivers and uses asynchronous or synchronous communication protocols. The bus interface transfer rate for asynchronous or synchronous is given in individual disc drive Volume 1 Product Manuals. The bus protocol supports multiple initiators, disconnect/reconnect, additional messages plus 6 byte and 10 byte Command Descriptor Blocks.

Unless specified otherwise in the individual drive Product Manuals (Vol. 1), the disc drive is always a target, and never an initiator. For certain commands, which may or may not be supported by a particular drive model, the drive must act as an initiator, but does not otherwise do so. For purposes of this specification, "disc drive" may be substituted for the word "target" wherever "target" appears.

## GLOSSARY

**Byte** - This term indicates an 8 bit hexadecimal construction.

**Command Descriptor Block (CDB)** - The structure used to communicate requests from an initiator to a target.

**Connect** - The function that occurs when an initiator selects a target to start an operation.

**Disconnect** - The function that occurs when a target releases control of the SCSI bus, allowing it to go to the Bus Free phase.

**FRU (Field Replaceable Unit)** - An assembly that is believed faulty based on test results. A value of 00h indicates an unknown cause or the end of a list of known possible causes. Nonzero values have product unique meanings.

**Initiator** - A SCSI device (usually a host system) that requests an operation to be performed by another SCSI device.

**Intermediate Status** - A status code sent from a target to an initiator upon completion of each command, except the last command, in a set of linked commands.

**I/O Process** - An I/O process consists of one initial connection and zero or more reconnections, all pertaining to a single command or group of linked commands. More specifically, the connection(s) pertain to a nexus as defined below in which one or more command descriptor blocks are usually transferred. An I/O process begins with the establishment of a nexus. An I/O process normally ends with the BUS Free phase following successful transfer of a COMMAND COMPLETE, ABORT, ABORT TAG, or CLEAR QUEUE message. An I/O process also ends when a hard RESET condition occurs, an unexpected BUS FREE phase occurs, or when the BUS FREE phase occurs following a BUS DEVICE RESET message.

**IT nexus** - A nexus prior to the successful receipt of an IDENTIFY message, at which time the nexus is changed to an IT L nexus. (See glossary word "Nexus").

**IT L nexus** - A nexus that exists between an initiator and a Logical Unit. This relationship replaces the prior IT nexus. (See glossary word "Nexus").

**IT L Q nexus** - A nexus between an initiator, a Logical Unit, and a queue tag following the successful receipt of one of the QUEUE messages. This relationship replaces the prior IT L nexus. (See glossary word "Nexus").

**Logical Unit** - A physical or virtual device addressable through a target. The disc drive is a target but also a Logical Unit.

**Logical Unit Number** - An encoded three bit identifier for the logical unit. The disc drive is considered Logical Unit number zero.

<b>LSB</b> - Least significant byte	<b>mm</b> - Millimetre
<b>LUN</b> - Logical unit number	<b>ms</b> - millisecond
<b>MSB</b> - Most significant byte	

**nexus** - A relationship that begins with the establishment of an initial connection and ends with the completion of the I/O process. The relationship starts as an association between the initiator and a selected target. The relationship may be restricted to specify a single logical unit or target routine by the successful transfer of an IDENTIFY message. The relationship may be further restricted by the successful transfer of a queue tag message.

**ns** - Nanosecond

**One** - A true signal value, (assertion).

**Page** - Several commands use regular parameter structures that are referred to as pages. These pages are identified with a value known as a page code.

**Queue** - This term refers to the command queue used in tagged queuing (see 4.7.2).

**Queue Tag** - The value associated with an I/O process that uniquely identifies it from other queued I/O processes on the logical unit for the same initiator.

**Reconnect** - The function that occurs when a target selects an initiator to continue an operation after a disconnect.

**Reconnection** - A reconnection exists from the assertion of the BSY signal in a RESELECTION phase until the next BUS FREE phase occurs. A reconnection can only occur between a target and an initiator.

**Reserved** - The term used for bits, bytes, fields, and code values that are set aside for future standardization.

**SCSI Address** - The octal representation of the unique address (0-7) assigned to a SCSI device. This address would normally be assigned and set in the SCSI device during system installation (see individual disc drive Product Manuals).

**SCSI ID** - The bit significant representation of the SCSI address referring to one of the signal lines DB(7-0).

**SCSI device** - A host computer adapter or a peripheral controller or an intelligent peripheral that can be attached to the SCSI bus.

**Signal Assertion** - The act of driving a signal to the true state.

**Signal Negation** - The act of driving a signal to the false state or allowing the cable terminators to bias the signal to the false state (by placing the driver in the high impedance condition).

**Signal Release** - The act of allowing the cable terminators to bias the signal to the false state (by placing the driver in the high impedance condition).

**xxh** - Numbers followed by lower case h are hexadecimal values. All other numbers are decimal values.

**Status** - One byte of information sent from a target to an initiator upon completion of each command.

**Target** - A SCSI device that performs an operation requested by an initiator.

**us** - Microsecond.

**Vendor Unique** - In this specification, this term indicates bits, fields, or code values that are vendor specific.

**Zero** - A logical false signal value, (negation).

### 1.3 Physical interface characteristics

The physical interface characteristics (cables, connectors, electrical descriptions, termination requirements, etc.) for the drives covered by this Interface Manual are found in each individual Product Manual, since these features are not the same for all drives.

## 1.4 Summary of SCSI commands and messages

Following is an alphabetical table listing the SCSI commands described in this manual. Details are given in Section 5.

Command name	Hex code	Group	Device type	Page number
Change Definition	40	2	All	108
Format Unit	04	0	dir. access	122
Inquiry	12	0	All	83
Log Select	4C	2	All	110
Log Sense	4D	2	All	119
Mode Select (6 byte)	15	0	dir. access	136
Mode Select (10 byte)	55	1	dir. access	186
Mode Sense (6 byte)	1A	0	dir. access	143
Mode Sense (10 byte)	5A	1	dir. access	186
Read	07	0	dir. access	132
Read Capacity	25	1	dir. access	170
Read Data Buffer	3C	1	All	107
Read Defect Data	37	1	dir. access	179
Read Extended	28	1	dir. access	172
Read Long	3E	1	dir. access	181
Reassign Blocks	07	0	dir. access	130
Receive Diagnostic Results	1C	0	All	95
Release (6 byte)	17	0	dir. access	143
Release (10 byte)	57	1	dir. access	185
Reserve (6 byte)	16	0	dir. access	142
Reserve (10 byte)	56	1	dir. access	184
Request Sense	03	0	All	74
Rezero	01	0	dir. access	122
Seek	0B	0	dir. access	135
Seek Extended	2B	1	dir. access	175
Send Diagnostics	1D	0	all	100
Start/Stop Unit	1B	0	dir. access	169
Synchronize Cache	35	1	dir. access	178
Test Unit Ready	00	0	All	73
Verify	2F	0	dir. access	177
Write	0A	0	dir. access	134
Write and Verify	2E	1	dir. access	176
Write Extended	2A	1	dir. access	174
Write Long	3F	1	dir. access	182

Following is an alphabetical summary of the SCSI messages described in this manual. Details are given in Section 3.5.

Message Name	Hex Code	Page number
Abort	06	28
Abort Tag	0D	29
Bus Device Reset	0C	29
Clear Queue	0E	29
Command Complete	00	29
Disconnect	04	30
Extended Message	01	40
Identify	80-FF	30
Ignore Wide Residue	23	41
Initiate Recovery	0F	not supported
Initiator Detected Error	05	31
Linked Command Complete	0A	31
Linked Command Complete (with flag)	0B	31
Message Parity Error	09	31
Message Reject	07	32
Modify Data Pointer	01	32, 35 (extended message)
No Operation	08	32
Queue Tag Messages		33
Head of Queue Tag	21	33
Ordered Queue Tag	22	34
Simple Queue Tag	20	34
Release Recovery	10	not supported
Restore Pointers	03	34
Save Data Pointers	02	34
Synchronous Data Transfer Request	01	34, 36 (extended message)
Terminate I/O Process	11	34 (optional)
Wide Data Transfer Request	01	38 (extended message)



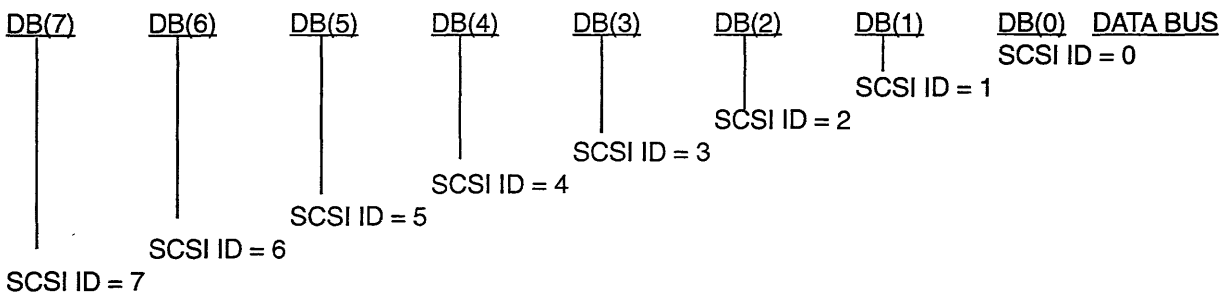


## 2.0 SCSI bus

This manual discusses only the "logical" and timing characteristics of the SCSI system and interface. The SCSI bus physical characteristics (voltages, connector configurations, pinouts, etc.) are given in the individual disc drive Product Manuals (Volume 1) Section "Interface requirements", which covers all of the interface requirements and SCSI features supported by the drive described in the particular Product Manual being referenced.

Communication on the SCSI Bus is allowed between only two SCSI devices at a time. Some Seagate drives support systems with a maximum of eight SCSI devices including the host computer(s) connected to the SCSI bus. Some Seagate drives support systems with a maximum of sixteen SCSI devices on the SCSI bus. Each SCSI device has a SCSI ID Bit assigned as shown in Figure 2.0-1. The SCSI ID is assigned by installing from 0 to 3 (8 device systems) jumper plugs or 0-4 (16 device systems) jumper plugs onto a connector in a binary coded configuration during system configuration. Some drive models have an interface that includes the SCSI bus ID lines, so that the host can set the drive ID over the interface. See individual disc drive Product Manual, Section "Option/configuration headers".

When two SCSI devices communicate on the SCSI Bus one acts as an initiator and the other acts as a target. The initiator (typically a host computer) originates an operation and the target performs the operation. The disc drive always operates as a target, unless specified otherwise (i.e., certain commands are supported) in the individual drive Product Manual.



Additional SCSI ID bits for devices that support 16 devices on the SCSI bus.

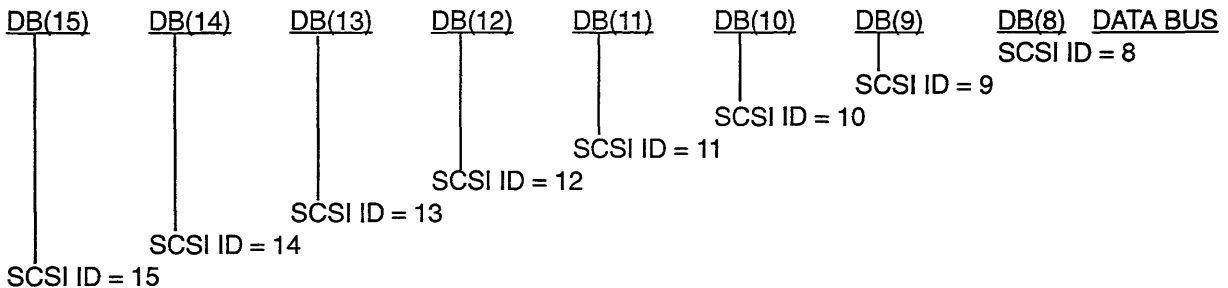


Figure 2.0-1. SCSI ID bits

The Host Adapter/Initiator must be identified by one of the eight SCSI Device Addresses. Make sure that none of the devices on the SCSI bus have duplicate addresses.

Certain SCSI bus functions are assigned to the initiator and certain SCSI bus functions are assigned to the target. The initiator will select a particular target. The target will request the transfer of Command, Data, Status or other information on the data bus.

Information transfers on the data bus are interlocked and follow a defined REQ/ACK Handshake protocol. One byte of information will be transferred with each handshake. Synchronous data transfers do not require a one for one interlocking of REQ/ACK signals, but the total number of REQ pulses in a particular data transfer event must equal the total number of ACK pulses. Synchronous data transfer option is described in Paragraph 3.5.3.2 and 3.1.5.2.

The disc drive supports single initiator, single target; single initiator, multiple target; multiple initiator, single target; or multiple initiator, multiple target bus configurations.

## 2.1 SCSI bus signals

There are ten control and eighteen data signals, as listed below:

- BSY
- C/D
- MSG
- DIFFSENS
- SEL
- I/O
- REQ
- DB(7-0, P); DB(15-8, P1)
- ACK
- ATN
- RST

Some drive models have a single 80 pin I/O connector that contains additional interface lines that carry drive configuration select signals. These are peculiar to certain drives and are not SCSI standard signals. These are described in the drive model's Volume 1 Product manual, but not here.

The 28 SCSI standard signals are described as follows:

**BSY (Busy)** - An "OR-tied" signal to indicate the bus is being used.

**SEL (Select)** - A signal used by an initiator to select a target, or by a target to reselect an initiator.

**C/D (Control/Data)** - A signal driven by a target to indicate whether Control or Data information is on the Data Bus. Assertion (see Paragraph 2.1.2) indicates Control.

**I/O (Input/Output)** - A signal driven by a target to control the direction of data movement on the Data Bus with respect to an initiator. Assertion indicates input to the initiator. This signal also distinguishes between Selection and Reselection phases.

**MSG (Message)** - A signal driven by a target during the Message phase.

**REQ (Request)** - A signal driven by a target to indicate a request for REQ/ACK data transfer handshake.

**ACK (Acknowledge)** - A signal driven by an initiator to indicate an acknowledgment for a REQ/ACK data transfer handshake.

**ATN (Attention)** - A signal driven by an initiator to indicate the Attention condition. It is used to request to send a message out to the target. See paragraph 3.2.1. If an initiator asserts ATN while asserting SEL it indicates to the target that the initiator supports messages other than command complete.

**RST (Reset)** - An "OR-tied" signal that indicates the Reset condition.

**DIFFSENS (Differential Sense)** - When the drive has differential SCSI I/O circuits, the DIFFSENS signal disables the drive's differential driver/receiver circuits if the SCSI I/O cable is plugged in upside down, or if a single-ended SCSI I/O cable is plugged into a differential I/O drive. Disabling the differential I/O drivers/receivers is necessary to prevent burning them out if a grounded I/O line is connected to any of the differential circuit outputs, which are at a positive voltage (+2 V or +3 V) when not disabled.

**DB(7-0,P) and DB(15-8,P1) (Data Bus)** - Sixteen data bit signals, plus parity bit signals form a Data Bus. DB(15) is the most significant bit and has the highest priority during the Arbitration phase (DB7 on eight device systems). Bit number significance, and priority decrease downward to DB(0). A data bit is defined as one when the signal is asserted and is defined as zero when the signal is negated.

**Data parity DB(P) and DB(P1) is odd** - The use of parity is a system option. The disc drive always checks parity on the data bits, but has the capability to enable/disable parity error reporting to the host. See configuration selection in the applicable Product Manual. Parity checking is not valid during the Arbitration phase.

Greater detail on each of the SCSI Bus signals is found in the following sections.

### 2.1.1 Drive Select

For SCSI ID selection install drive select jumpers as shown in configuration selection figure in applicable Product Manual. Refer to section 10 of the individual drive Product Manual for the location of the drive select header. The disc drive using the eight bit data interface can have one of eight ID bits selected by installing 0 to 3 jumpers in a binary coded configuration on the drive select header. Drives using the 16 bit data interface can have one of sixteen ID bits selected by installing 0 to 4 jumpers in a binary coded configuration on the drive select header.

### 2.1.2 Signal Values

Signals may assume true or false values. There are two methods of driving these signals. In both cases, the signal shall be actively driven true, or asserted. In the case of OR-tied drivers, the driver does not drive the signal to the false state, rather the bias circuitry of the bus terminators pulls the signal false whenever it is released by the drivers at every SCSI device. If any driver is asserted, then the signal is true. In the case of non-OR-tied drivers, the signal may be negated. Negated means that the signal may be actively driven false, or may be simply released (in which case the bias circuitry pulls it false), at the option of the implementor.

### 2.1.3 OR-Tied signals

The BSY and RST signals shall be OR-tied only. In the ordinary operation of the bus, these signals are simultaneously driven true by several drivers. No signals other than BSY, RST, and DB(P) are simultaneously driven by two or more drivers, and any signal other than BSY and RST may employ OR-tied or non-OR-tied drivers. DB(P) shall not be driven false during the Arbitration phase. There is no operational problem in mixing OR-tied and non-OR-tied drivers on signals other than BSY and RST.

### 2.1.4 Signal sources

Table 2.1.4-1 indicates which type of SCSI device is allowed to source each signal. All SCSI device drivers that are not active sources shall be in the passive state. Note that the RST signal may be sourced by any SCSI device at any time. The disc drive functions as a target.

## 2.2 SCSI bus timing

Unless otherwise indicated, the delay time measurements for each SCSI device, defined in Paragraphs 2.2.1 through 2.2.14, shall be calculated from signal conditions existing at that SCSI device's own SCSI bus connection. Thus, these measurements (except skew delay) can be made without considering delays in the cable.

See Section 2.3 for Fast Synchronous transfer option timing.

**Table 2.1.4-1. Signal sources**

Bus Phase	BSY	Signals			
		C/D, I/O, SEL	MSG, REQ	ACK/ATN	DB(7-0,P) (15-8,P1)
Bus Free	None	None	None	None	None
Arbitration	All	Winner	None	None	SCSI ID
Selection	I&T	Init.	None	Init.	Init.
Reselection	I&T	Target	Target	Init.	Target
Command	Target	None	Target	Init.	Init.
Data In	Target	None	Target	Init.	Target
Data Out	Target	None	Target	Init.	Init.
Status	Target	None	Target	Init.	Target
Message in	Target	None	Target	init.	Target
Message Out	Target	None	Target	Init.	Init.

**ALL:** The signal shall be driven by all actively arbitrating SCSI devices.

**SCSI ID:** A unique data bit (the SCSI ID) shall be driven by each actively arbitrating SCSI device: the other seven data bits shall be released (i.e., not driven) by this SCSI device. The parity bit [DB(P), DB(P1)] may be undriven or driven to the true state, but shall never be driven to the false state during this phase.

**I&T:** The signal shall be driven by the initiator, target, or both, as specified in the Selection phase and Reselection phase.

**Init:** If this signal is driven, it shall be driven only by the active initiator.

**None:** The signal shall be released; that is, not be driven by any SCSI device. The bias circuitry of the bus terminators pulls the signal to the false state.

**Winner:** The signal shall be driven by the one SCSI device that wins arbitration.

**Target:** If the signal is driven, it shall be driven only by the active target.

### 2.2.1 Arbitration delay (2.4 us)

The minimum time a SCSI device shall wait from asserting BSY for arbitration until the Data Bus can be examined to see if arbitration has been won. There is no maximum time.

### 2.2.2 Assertion period (90 ns)

The minimum time that a target shall assert REQ while using synchronous data transfers. Also, the minimum time that an initiator shall assert ACK while using synchronous data transfers.

### 2.2.3 Bus clear delay (800 ns)

The maximum time for a SCSI device to stop driving all bus signals after:

- (1) The Bus Free phase is detected (BSY and SEL both negated for a bus settle delay).
- (2) SEL is received from another SCSI device during the Arbitration phase.
- (3) The transition of RST to assertion.

Note. For the first condition above, the maximum time for a SCSI device to clear the bus is 1200 ns from BSY and SEL first becoming both negated. If a SCSI device requires more than a bus settle delay to detect Bus Free phase, it shall clear the bus within a Bus Clear delay minus the excess time.

### 2.2.4 Bus free delay (800 ns)

The minimum time that a SCSI device shall wait from its detection of the Bus Free phase (BSY and SEL both negated for a bus settle delay) until its assertion of BSY when going to the Arbitration phase.

### 2.2.5 Bus set delay (1.8 us)

The maximum time for a SCSI device to assert BSY and its SCSI ID bit on the Data Bus after it detects Bus Free phase (BSY and SEL both negated for a bus settle delay) for the purpose of entering the Arbitration phase.

### 2.2.6 Bus settle delay (400 ns)

The time to wait for the bus to settle after changing certain control signals as specified in the protocol definitions.

### 2.2.7 Cable skew delay (10 ns)

The maximum difference in propagation time allowed between any two SCSI bus signals when measured between any two SCSI devices.

### 2.2.8 Data release delay (400 ns)

The maximum time for an initiator to release the Data Bus signals following the transition of the I/O signal from negation to assertion.

### 2.2.9 Deskew delay (45 ns)

The minimum time required for deskew of certain signals.

### 2.2.10 Disconnection delay (200 us)

The minimum time that a target shall wait after releasing BSY before participating in an Arbitration phase when honoring a Disconnect message from the initiator.

### 2.2.11 Hold time (45 ns)

The minimum time added between the assertion of REQ or ACK and the changing of the data lines to provide hold time in the initiator or target, respectively, while using synchronous data transfers.

### 2.2.12 Negation period (90 ns)

The minimum time that a target shall negate REQ while using synchronous data transfers. Also, the minimum time that an initiator shall negate ACK while using synchronous data transfers.

**2.2.13 Reset hold time (25 us)**

The minimum time for which RST is asserted. There is no maximum time.

**2.2.14 Selection abort time (200 us)**

The maximum time that a target (or initiator) shall take from its most recent detection of being selected (or reselected) until asserting a BSY response. This timeout is required to ensure that a target (or initiator) does not assert BSY after a Selection (or Reselection) phase has been aborted. This is not the selection timeout period; see Sections 3.1.3.5 and 3.1.4.2 for a complete description.

**2.2.15 Selection timeout delay (250 ms recommended)**

The minimum time an initiator (or target) should wait for a BSY response during the Selection (or Reselection) phase before starting the timeout procedure. The drive implements this 250 ms selection timeout delay.

**2.2.16 Transfer period (negotiated by Synchronous Data Transfer message)**

The minimum time allowed between the leading edges of successive REQ pulses and of successive ACK pulses while using synchronous data transfers. (See Sections 3.1.5.2 and 3.5.3.2)

**2.3 Fast synchronous transfer option**

When devices negotiate a synchronous data transfer period of less than 200 ns they are said to be using "fast synchronous data transfers". Devices which negotiate a synchronous data transfer period greater than or equal to 200 ns use timing parameters specified in 2.2. When a fast synchronous data transfer period is negotiated, those specific times redefined in this section are used; those not redefined remain the same. The minimum synchronous data transfer period is 100 ns.

**2.3.1 Fast Assertion period (30 ns)**

This value is the minimum time that a target shall assert REQ while using fast synchronous data transfers. Also, the minimum time that an initiator shall assert ACK while using fast synchronous data transfers.

**2.3.2 Fast cable skew delay (5 ns)**

This value is the maximum difference in propagation time allowed between any two SCSI bus signals measured between any two SCSI devices while using fast synchronous data transfers.

**2.3.3 Fast deskew delay (20 ns)**

This value is the minimum time required for deskew of certain signals while using fast synchronous data transfers.

**2.3.4 Fast hold time (10 ns)**

This value is the minimum time added between the assertion of REQ or ACK and the changing of the data lines to provide hold time in the initiator or target respectively, while using fast synchronous data transfers.

**2.3.5 Fast negation period (30 ns)**

This value is the minimum time that a target shall negate REQ while using fast synchronous data transfers. Also, the minimum time that an initiator shall negate ACK while using fast synchronous data transfers.

### 3.0 Logical characteristics

The operations of the SCSI bus as described in Section 3 are supported by the disc drive, as specified in each drive's Product Manual (Vol. 1). The disc drive always functions as the target unless otherwise stated.

#### 3.1 SCSI bus phases

The disc drive responds to 8 distinct bus phases.

Bus Free phase  
Arbitration phase  
Selection phase  
Reselection phase

Command Phase  
Data (in and out)

Status (in only)  
Message (in and out)

} These phases are collectively termed the Information transfer phases

The SCSI Bus can never be in more than one phase at a time.

##### 3.1.1 Bus free phase

The Bus Free phase indicates that no SCSI device is actively using the SCSI bus and it is available for subsequent users.

SCSI devices shall detect the Bus Free phase after SEL and BSY are both false for at least a bus settle delay.

SCSI devices shall release all SCSI bus signals within a bus clear delay after BSY and SEL are continuously negated for a bus settle delay. If a SCSI device requires more than a bus settle delay to detect the Bus Free phase, it shall release all SCSI bus signals within a bus clear delay minus the excess time to detect the Bus Free phase. The total time to clear the SCSI bus shall not exceed a bus settle delay plus a bus clear delay.

If the initiator detects the Bus Free phase (except as a result of a Reset condition, an Abort message, an Abort Tag message, a Clear Queue message or a Bus Device Reset message) without first receiving a Disconnect or Command Complete message, it shall be considered to be an error condition. If the target intentionally creates this condition, the target shall:

1. Clear the current command, if any, for that initiator.
2. Set up Request Sense data with appropriate Sense Key and Error Code if the LUN is known.

Whenever an initiator detects an unexpected Bus Free, it should attempt to select and issue Request Sense to determine if the previous command was:

1. Aborted with valid Request Sense data, or
2. Aborted without any valid Request Sense data.

### 3.1.2 Arbitration phase

The Arbitration phase allows one SCSI device to gain control of the SCSI bus so that it can assume the role of an initiator or target. The disc drive arbitrates for the bus as a target implementing reselection or when performing AEN (if AEN is implemented). The disc drive supports arbitration by multiple SCSI devices.

The procedure for a SCSI device to obtain control of the SCSI bus is as follows:

1. The SCSI device shall first wait for the Bus Free phase to occur. The Bus Free phase is detected when BSY and SEL are simultaneously and continuously negated for a minimum of a bus settle delay. (Implementors note: This bus settle delay is necessary because a transmission line phenomenon known as a "Wire-OR glitch" may cause BSY to briefly appear negated, even though it is being asserted.)
2. The SCSI device shall wait a minimum of a bus free delay after detection of the Bus Free phase (i.e. after BSY and SEL are both negated for a bus settle delay) before driving any signal.
3. Following the bus free delay in Step (2), the SCSI device may arbitrate for the SCSI bus by asserting both BSY and its own SCSI ID, however the SCSI device shall not arbitrate (i.e. assert BSY and its SCSI ID) if more than a bus settle delay has passed since the Bus Free phase was last observed. (Implementors Note: There is no maximum delay before asserting BSY and the SCSI ID following the bus free delay in Step (2) as long as the bus remains in the Bus Free phase. However, SCSI devices that delay longer than a bus settle delay plus a bus set delay from the time when BSY and SEL are first negated may fail to participate in arbitration when competing with faster SCSI devices.)
4. After waiting at least an arbitration delay (measured from its assertion of BSY) the SCSI device shall examine the Data Bus. If a higher priority SCSI ID bit is true on the Data Bus [DB(7) is the highest], the SCSI device has lost the arbitration and the SCSI device must release its signals and return to Step (1). If no higher priority SCSI ID bit is true on the Data Bus, the SCSI device has won the arbitration and it shall assert SEL. Any other SCSI device that is participating in the Arbitration phase has lost the arbitration and shall release BSY and its SCSI ID bit within a bus clear delay after SEL becomes true. A SCSI device that loses arbitration may return to Step (1).
5. The SCSI device that wins arbitration shall wait at least a bus clear delay plus a bus settle delay after asserting SEL before changing any signals.

**Note.** The SCSI ID bit is a single bit on the Data Bus that corresponds to the SCSI device's unique SCSI address. All other seven Data Bus bits shall be released by the SCSI device. Parity is not valid during the Arbitration phase, DB(P) may be undriven or driven to the true state, but shall not be driven to the false state.

### 3.1.3 Selection phase

The Selection phase allows an initiator to select a target for the purpose of initiating some target function (e.g., Read or Write command).

**Note.** During the Selection phase the I/O signal shall be negated so this phase can be distinguished from the Reselection phase.



### 3.1.3.1 Nonarbitrating system

In systems with the Arbitration phase not implemented, the initiator shall first detect the Bus Free phase and then wait a minimum of a bus clear delay. Then, except in certain single initiator environments with initiators employing the single initiator option (see 3.1.3.4), the initiator shall assert the desired target's SCSI ID and its own initiator SCSI ID on the Data Bus. After two deskew delays, the initiator shall assert SEL.

### 3.1.3.2 Arbitrating systems

In systems with the Arbitration phase implemented, the SCSI device that won the arbitration has both BSY and SEL asserted and has delayed at least a bus clear delay plus a bus settle delay before ending the Arbitration phase. The SCSI device that won the arbitration becomes an initiator by releasing I/O. Except in certain single initiator environments with initiators employing the single initiator option (see 3.1.3.4), the initiator shall set the Data Bus to a value which is the OR of its SCSI ID bit and the target's SCSI ID bit. The initiator shall then wait at least two deskew delays and release BSY. The initiator shall then wait at least a bus settle delay before looking for a response from the target.

### 3.1.3.3 All systems

In all systems, the target shall determine that it is selected when SEL and its SCSI ID bit are true and the BSY and I/O signals are false for at least a bus settle delay. The selected target will examine the Data Bus in order to determine the SCSI ID of the selecting initiator unless the initiator employed the single initiator option (see 3.1.3.4). The selected target shall then assert BSY within a selection abort time of its selection; this is required for correct operation of the timeout procedure. In systems with parity implemented, the target shall not respond to a selection if bad parity is detected. Also, if more than two SCSI ID bits are on the Data Bus, the target shall not respond to selection. At least two deskew delays after the initiator detects BSY is asserted, it shall release SEL and may change the Data Bus.

### 3.1.3.4 Single initiator option

Initiators that do not implement the Reselection phase, and do not operate in the multiple initiator environment, are allowed to set only the target's SCSI ID bit during the Selection phase. This makes it impossible for the target to determine the initiator's SCSI ID.

### 3.1.3.5 Selection time out procedure

A Selection timeout procedure is specified for clearing the SCSI bus. If the initiator waits a minimum of a selection timeout delay and there has been no BSY response from the target, the initiator shall continue asserting SEL and shall release the Data Bus. If the initiator has not detected BSY to be asserted after at least a selection abort time plus two deskew delays, the initiator shall release SEL allowing the SCSI bus to go to the Bus Free phase. SCSI devices shall ensure when responding to selection that the selection was still valid within a selection abort time of their assertion of BSY. Failure to comply with this requirement could result in an improper selection (two targets connected to the same initiator, wrong target connected to an initiator, or a target connected to no initiator).

The disc drive supports systems that implement this procedure.

### 3.1.4 Reselection phase

Reselection is a phase that allows a target to reconnect to an initiator for the purpose of continuing some operation that was previously started by the initiator but was suspended by the target (i.e., the target disconnected by allowing a Bus Free phase to occur before the operation was complete).

Reselection can be used only in systems that have Arbitration phase implemented.

The disc drive implements the Reselection phase if the system is capable of supporting Reselection.

ATN during Selection implies that the host supports messages other than command complete. Bit 6 of the Identify message indicates that the Disconnected/Reconnect privilege is granted.

ATN not asserted during Selection means that the host doesn't support the Identify message, so the Disconnected/Reconnect privilege cannot be granted. If a target is not granted disconnect/reconnect privileges, it shall not disconnect until the current command is completed. None of the Disconnect/Reconnect Control Page (page 02h) parameters of Mode Select are applicable if disconnect/reconnect privileges are not granted by the initiator. Operations taking longer than the bus inactivity limit specified do not cause a disconnect.

#### 3.1.4.1 Reselection Procedure

Upon completing the Arbitration phase, the winning SCSI device has both BSY and SEL asserted and has delayed at least a bus clear delay plus a bus settle delay. The winning SCSI device becomes a target by asserting the I/O signal. That device shall also set the Data Bus to a value that is the OR of its SCSI ID bit and the initiator's SCSI ID bit. The target shall wait at least two deskew delays and release BSY. The target shall then wait at least a bus settle delay before looking for a response from the initiator.

The initiator shall determine that it is reselected when SEL, I/O, and its SCSI ID bit are true and BSY is false for at least a bus settle delay. The reselected initiator may examine the Data Bus to determine the SCSI ID of the reselecting target.

The reselected initiator shall then assert BSY within a selection abort time of its most recent detection of being reselected; this is required for correct operation of the timeout procedure. In systems with parity implemented, the initiator shall not respond to Reselection if bad parity is detected. The initiator shall not respond to a Reselection if more than two SCSI ID bits are on the Data Bus.

After the target detects BSY, it shall also assert BSY and wait at least two deskew delays and then release SEL. The target may then change the I/O signal and the Data Bus. After the reselected initiator detects SEL false, it shall release BSY. The target shall continue asserting BSY until the target is ready to relinquish the SCSI bus.

**Note.** When the target is asserting BSY, a transmission line phenomenon known as a "Wired-OR glitch" may cause BSY to appear false for up to a round trip propagation delay following the release of BSY by the initiator. This is the reason why the Bus Free phase is recognized only after both BSY and SEL are continuously false for a minimum of a bus settle delay. Cables longer than 25 metres should not be used even if the chosen driver, receiver, and cable provide adequate noise margins, because they increase the duration of the glitch and could cause SCSI devices to inadvertently detect the Bus Free phase.

### 3.1.4.2 Reselection timeout procedure

This Reselection timeout procedure is specified for clearing the SCSI bus during a Reselection phase. If the target waits a minimum of a selection timeout period and there has been no BSY response from the initiator, the target shall continue asserting SEL and I/O and shall release all Data Bus signals. If the target has not detected BSY to be true after at least a selection abort time plus two deskew delays, the target shall release SEL and I/O allowing the SCSI bus to go to the Bus Free phase. SCSI devices that respond to Reselection shall ensure that the Reselection was still valid within a selection abort time of their assertion of BSY. Failure to comply with this requirement could result in an improper Reselection (two initiators connected to the same target or the wrong initiator connected to a target).

If an initiator times out while waiting to be reselected, the initiator should attempt to select and issue Request Sense to determine if the previous command is:

1. Still in process (Busy Status is returned),
2. Aborted with valid Request Sense data, or
3. Aborted without valid Request Sense data.

### 3.1.5 Information transfer phases

NOTE: The Command, Data, Status, and Message phases are grouped together as information transfer phases because they are all used to transfer data or control information via the Data Bus. The actual contents of the information is beyond the scope of this section.

The C/D, I/O, and MSG signals are used to distinguish between the different information transfer phases. (See Table 3.1.5-1). The target drives these three signals and therefore controls all changes from one phase to another. The initiator can request a Message Out phase by asserting ATN, while the target can cause the Bus Free phase by releasing MSG, C/D, I/O, and BSY.

Table 3.1.5-1. Information transfer phases

MSG	Signal		Phase Name	Direction of Transfer	Comment
	C/D	I/O			
0	0	0	DATA OUT	Initiator to target	Data
0	0	1	DATA IN	Initiator from target	Phase
0	1	0	COMMAND	Initiator to target	
0	1	1	STATUS	Initiator from target	
1	0	0	*		
1	0	1	*		
1	1	0	MESSAGE OUT	Initiator to Target	Message
1	1	1	MESSAGE IN	Initiator from Target	Phase

Key: 0 = False, 1 = True, \* = Reserved

The information transfer phases use one or more REQ/ACK handshakes to control the information transfer. Each REQ/ACK handshake allows the transfer of one byte of information. During the information transfer phases BSY shall remain true and SEL shall remain false. Additionally, during the information transfer phases, the target shall continuously envelope the REQ/ACK handshake(s) with C/D, I/O, and MSG in such a manner that these control signals are valid for a bus settle delay before the assertion of REQ of the first handshake and remain valid until the negation of ACK at the end of the last handshake.

### 3.1.5.1 Asynchronous information transfer

The target shall control the direction of information transfer by means of the I/O signal. When I/O is true, information shall be transferred from the target to the initiator. When I/O is false, information shall be transferred from the initiator to the target.

If I/O is true (transfer to the initiator), the target shall first drive  $DB(7-0,P)^*$  to their desired values, delay at least one deskew delay plus a cable skew delay, then assert  $\overline{REQ}$ .  $DB(7-0,P)^*$  shall remain valid until  $\overline{ACK}$  is true at the target. The initiator shall read  $DB(7-0,P)^*$  after  $\overline{REQ}$  is true, then signal its acceptance of the data by asserting  $\overline{ACK}$ . When  $\overline{ACK}$  becomes true at the target, the target may change or release  $DB(7-0,P)^*$  and shall negate  $\overline{REQ}$ . After  $\overline{REQ}$  is false the initiator shall negate  $\overline{ACK}$ . After  $\overline{ACK}$  is false, the target may continue the transfer by driving  $DB(7-0,P)^*$  and asserting  $\overline{REQ}$ , as described above.

If I/O is false (transfer to the target) the target shall request information by asserting  $\overline{REQ}$ . The initiator shall drive  $DB(7-0,P)^*$  to their desired values, delay at least one deskew delay plus a cable skew delay and assert  $\overline{ACK}$ . The initiator shall continue to drive the  $DB(7-0,P)^*$  until  $\overline{REQ}$  is false. When  $\overline{ACK}$  becomes true at the target, the target shall read  $DB(7-0,P)^*$ , then negate  $\overline{REQ}$ . When  $\overline{REQ}$  becomes false at the initiator, the initiator may change or release  $DB(7-0,P)^*$  and shall negate  $\overline{ACK}$ . The target may continue the transfer by asserting  $\overline{REQ}$ , as described above.

### 3.1.5.2 Synchronous data transfer

Synchronous data transfer may be used only in the data phase if previously agreed to by the initiator and target through the message system (see SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message 3.5.3.2). The messages determine the use of synchronous mode by both SCSI devices and establish a REQ/ACK offset and a transfer period.

The REQ/ACK offset specifies the maximum number of REQ pulses that can be sent by the target in advance of the number of ACK pulses received from the initiator, establishing a pacing mechanism. If the number of REQ pulses exceeds the number of ACK pulses by the REQ/ACK offset, the target shall not assert REQ until the next ACK pulse is received. A requirement for successful completion of the data phase is that the number of ACK and REQ pulses be equal.

The target shall assert the REQ signal for a minimum of an assertion period. The target shall wait at least the greater of a transfer period from the last transition of REQ to true or a minimum of a negation period from the last transition of REQ to false before asserting the REQ signal.

The initiator shall send one pulse on the ACK signal for each REQ pulse received. The ACK signal may be asserted as soon as the leading edge of the corresponding REQ pulse has been received. The initiator shall assert the ACK signal for a minimum of an assertion period. The initiator shall wait at least the greater of a transfer period from the last transition of ACK to true or for a minimum of a negation period from the last transition of ACK to false before asserting the ACK signal.

---

\*And where applicable,  $DB(15-8, P1)$ .

If I/O is asserted (transfer to the initiator), the target shall first drive DB(7-0,P)\* to their desired values, wait at least one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay, then assert REQ. DB(7-0,P)\* shall be held valid for a minimum of one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay plus one hold time after the assertion of REQ. The target shall assert REQ for a minimum of an assertion period. The target may then negate REQ and change or release DB(7-0,P)\*. The initiator shall read the value on DB(7-0,P)\* within one hold time of the transition of REQ to true. The initiator shall then respond with an ACK pulse.

If I/O is negated (transfer to the target), the initiator shall transfer one byte for each REQ pulse received. After receiving a REQ pulse, the initiator shall first drive DB(7-0,P)\* to their desired values, delay at least one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay, then assert ACK. The initiator shall hold DB(7-0,P)\* valid for at least one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay plus one hold time after the assertion of ACK. The initiator shall assert ACK for a minimum of an assertion period. The initiator may then negate ACK and may change or release DB(7-0,P)\*. The target shall read the value of DB(7-0,P)\* within one hold time of the transition of ACK to true.

### **3.1.6 Command phase**

The Command phase allows the target to request command information from the initiator.

The target shall assert the C/D signal and negate the I/O and MSG signals during the REQ/ACK handshake(s) of this phase.

### **3.1.7 Data phase**

The Data phase is a term that encompasses both the Data In phase and the Data Out phase.

#### **3.1.7.1 Data in phase**

The Data In phase allows the target to request that it send data to the initiator.

The target shall assert the I/O signal and negate the C/D and MSG signals during the REQ/ACK handshake(s) of this phase.

#### **3.1.7.2 Data out phase**

The Data Out phase allows the target to request that data be sent to it from the initiator.

The target shall negate the C/D, I/O, and MSG signals during the REQ/ACK handshake(s) of this phase.

### **3.1.8 Status phase**

The Status phase allows the target to request that it send status information to the initiator. See section 4.3 for details.

The target shall assert C/D and I/O and negate the MSG signal during the REQ/ACK handshake of this phase.

---

\*And where applicable, DB(15-8, P1).

### 3.1.9 Message phase

The Message phase is a term that references either a Message In or a Message Out phase. Multiple messages may be sent during either phase. Multiple byte messages shall be wholly contained with a single message phase. Messages supported by a particular disc drive are listed in the Product Manual for that drive.

#### 3.1.9.1 Message in phase

The Message In phase allows the target to request that it send message(s) to the initiator.

The target shall assert C/D, I/O, and MSG during the REQ/ACK handshake(s) of this phase.

#### 3.1.9.2 Message out phase

The Message Out phase allows the target to request that message(s) be sent from the initiator to the target. The target may invoke this phase at its convenience in response to the Attention condition (see 3.2.1) created by the initiator.

The target shall assert C/D and MSG and negate I/O during the REQ/ACK handshake(s) of this phase. The target shall handshake byte(s) in this phase until ATN goes false, unless an error occurs (see Message Reject, 3.5.2).

If the target detects one or more parity error(s) on the message byte(s) received, it may indicate its desire to retry the message(s) by asserting REQ after detecting ATN has gone false and before changing to any other phase. The initiator, upon detecting this condition, shall resend all of the previous message byte(s) sent during this phase. When resending more than one message byte, the initiator shall assert ATN before asserting ACK on the first byte and shall maintain ATN asserted until the last byte is sent as described in 3.2.1.

If the target receives all of the message byte(s) successfully (i.e., no parity errors), it shall indicate that it shall not retry by changing to any information transfer phase other than the Message Out phase and transfer at least one byte. The target may also indicate that it has successfully received the message byte(s) by changing to the Bus Free phase (e.g., Abort or Bus Device Reset messages).

### 3.1.10 Signal restrictions between phases

When the SCSI bus is between two information transfer phases, the following restrictions shall apply to the SCSI bus signals:

1. The BSY, SEL, REQ, and ACK signals shall not change.
2. The C/D, I/O, MSG, and Data Bus signals may change. When switching the Data Bus direction from Out (initiator driving) to In (target driving), the target shall delay driving the Data Bus by at least a data release delay plus settle delay after asserting the I/O signal and the initiator shall release the Data Bus no later than a data release delay after the transition of the I/O signal to true. When switching the Data Bus direction from In (target driving) to Out (initiator driving), the target shall release the Data Bus no later than a deskew delay after negating the I/O signal.
3. The ATN and RST signals may change as defined under the descriptions for the Attention condition (3.2.1) and Reset condition (3.2.2).

## 3.2 SCSI bus conditions

The SCSI bus has three asynchronous conditions; the Attention condition, the Reset condition and the Contingent Allegiance condition. These conditions cause the SCSI device to perform certain actions and can alter the phase sequence.

### 3.2.1 Attention condition

The Attention condition allows an initiator to inform a target that the initiator has a message ready. The target gets this message at its convenience by performing a Message Out phase.

The initiator creates the Attention condition by asserting ATN at any time except during the Arbitration or Bus Free.

The initiator shall assert the ATN signal two deskew delays before negating the ACK signal for the last byte transferred in a bus phase for the attention condition to be honored before transition to a new bus phase. Asserting the ATN signal later might not be honored until a later bus phase and then may not result in the expected action. The initiator shall negate the ATN signal two deskew delays before asserting the ACK signal while transferring the last byte of the message. If the target detects that the initiator failed to meet this requirement, then the target shall go to BUS FREE phase (see unexpected BUS FREE, 3.1.1).

The disc drive responds with MESSAGE OUT phase as follows:

1. If ATN occurs during a Data phase, Message Out occurs at a convenient time. It may not occur until several logical blocks after ATN is first asserted.
2. If ATN occurs during a Command phase, Message Out occurs after transfer of all Command Descriptor Block bytes has been completed.
3. If ATN occurs during a Status phase, Message Out occurs after the status byte has been acknowledged by the initiator.
4. If ATN occurs during a Message In Phase, Message Out occurs after the last byte of the current message has been acknowledged by the initiator.
5. If ATN occurs during a Selection or Reselection phase, Message Out occurs immediately after that Selection or Reselection phase. In the Reselection case, the disc drive enters the Message Out phase after it has sent its Identify message for that Reselection Phase.

The initiator shall keep ATN asserted if more than one byte is to be transferred. The initiator may negate the ATN signal at any time except while the ACK signal is asserted during a Message Out phase. Recommended practice is that the initiator negates ATN while REQ is true and ACK is false during the last REQ/ACK handshake of the Message Out phase.

### 3.2.2 Reset condition

The Reset condition is used to immediately clear all SCSI devices from the bus. This condition shall take precedence over all other phases and conditions. During the Reset condition, the state of all SCSI bus signals other than RST is not defined.

The disc drive never asserts the Reset signal.

All SCSI devices shall release all SCSI bus signals (except RST) within a bus clear delay of the transition of RST to true. The Bus Free phase always follows the Reset condition.

Disc drives that operate in accordance with this specification implement only the "hard" Reset option. Upon detection of the Reset condition, the disc drive shall:

1. Clear all uncompleted commands,
2. Release all SCSI device reservations,
3. Return any SCSI device operating modes (Mode Select, etc.) to their default or last saved conditions.
4. Activate Unit Attention Condition for all Initiators.

### 3.2.3 Contingent allegiance condition

The contingent allegiance condition shall exist following the return of CHECK CONDITION or COMMAND TERMINATED STATUS and may optionally exist following an unexpected disconnect. The contingent allegiance condition shall be preserved for the I T x nexus until it is cleared. The contingent allegiance condition shall be cleared upon the generation of a hard reset condition or by an ABORT message, a BUS DEVICE RESET message, or any subsequent Untagged command for the I T x nexus. While the contingent allegiance condition exists the disc drive shall preserve the sense data for the initiator.

While the contingent allegiance condition exists, the disc drive shall respond to any other requests for access to the logical unit from another initiator with a BUSY status. Execution of queued commands shall be suspended until the Contingent Allegiance condition is cleared.

Not all disc drives support the Contingent Allegiance condition. See individual drive Product manual.

## 3.3 SCSI bus phase sequences

The order in which phases are used on the SCSI bus follows a prescribed sequence.

In all systems, the Reset condition can abort any phase and is always followed by the Bus Free phase. Also, any other phase can be followed by the Bus Free phase.

### 3.3.1 Nonarbitrating system

For systems in which the Arbitration phase is not implemented, the allowable sequences are shown in Figure 3.3-2. The normal progression is from the Bus Free phase to Selection, and from Selection to one or more of the information transfer phases (Command, Data, Status, or Message).

### 3.3.2 Arbitrating systems

For systems in which the Arbitration phase is implemented, the allowable sequences are shown in Figure 3.3-1. The normal progression is from the Bus Free phase to Arbitration, from Arbitration to Selection or Reselection, and from Selection or Reselection to one or more of the information transfer phases (Command, Data, Status, or Message).



### 3.3.3 All systems

There are no restrictions on the sequences between information transfer phases. A phase type may even be followed by the same phase type (e.g., a Data phase may be followed by another Data phase).

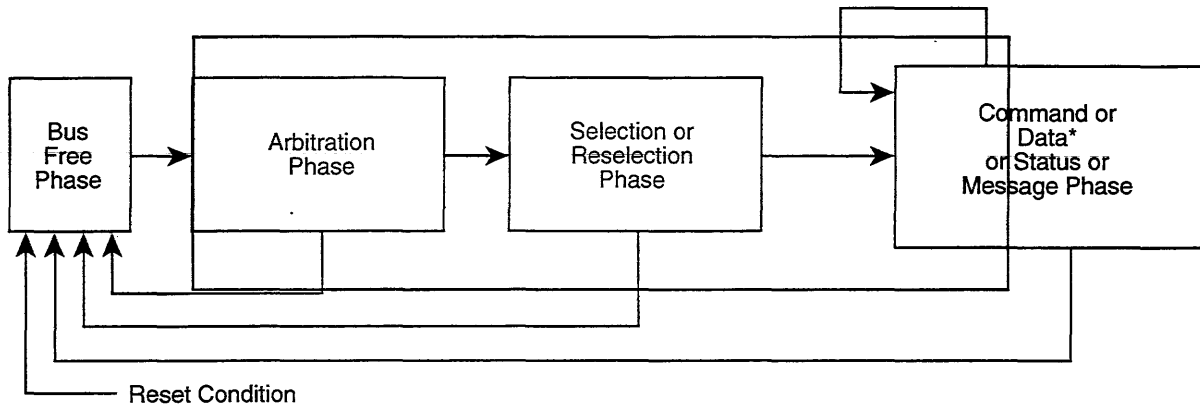


Figure 3.3-1. Phase sequences with arbitration

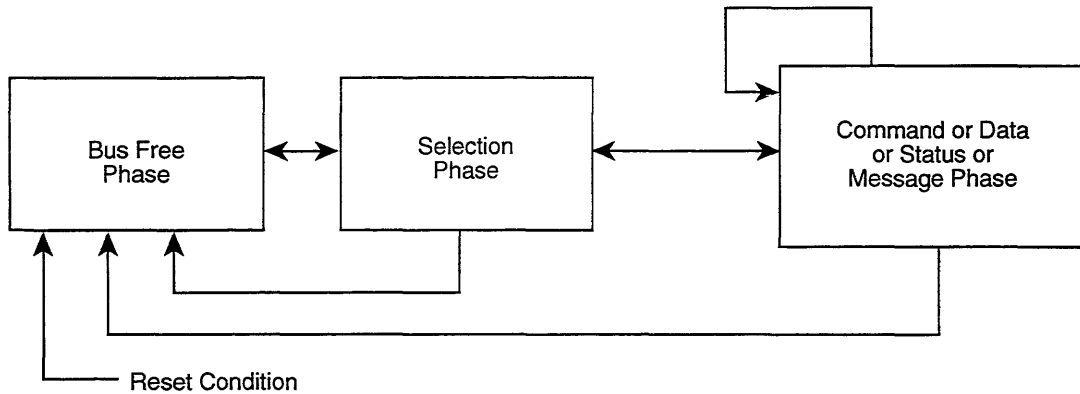


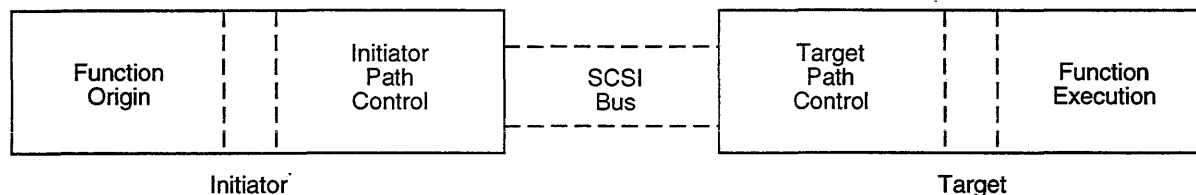
Figure 3.3-2. Phase sequences without arbitration

*\*Data phase must follow a command phase except after reselection phase*

### 3.4 SCSI pointers

The disc drive supports systems that use the pointer philosophy described in the following paragraphs.

Consider the system shown in Figure 3.4-1 in which an initiator and target communicate on the SCSI bus in order to execute a command.



**Figure 3.4-1. Simplified SCSI system**

The SCSI architecture provides for sets of pointers to be kept within each initiator Path Control area (see Figure 3.4-1). These pointers are in sets of three pointers per set. The pointers in each set point to three storage area sections in the initiator. The three sections contain the following information:

1. A command from initiator to target.
2. Status (from target) associated with the command.
3. Data (to/from target) associated with the command.

Of these three-pointer sets there are two types:

1. Current (active) pointers (one set per initiator only).
2. Saved pointers (one or more sets per initiator, up to seven sets total).

The use of these two types of pointers is described in the following paragraphs.

### 3.4.1 Current pointers

Current Pointers represent the current state of the interface between the initiator and the target the initiator is currently connected to and servicing. The pointers for the current command remain in the initiator Current Pointer registers from the time they are put there after the completion of all activities associated with the previous command until the logic of the Initiator dictates a new command shall be executed. Normally, successful receipt by the initiator of good status associated with current command triggers the initiator to insert a new set of the three "current" pointers for the next command. The initiator does not wait for the Command Complete signal before deciding whether to retry the current command or transfer in new command pointers. If the current command was never satisfactorily completed, the initiator logic may dictate that some special response action be taken, such as restoring the values in the current pointer registers to their beginning values so the current command can be resent\*, or sending a command such as a Request Sense command to the target, or the initiator could ignore the unsatisfactorily completed command and send the next originally scheduled command.

\* For example, if the drive detects a parity error in the data out from the current command, it sends the "Restore Pointers" message to the initiator. In this case, the Restore Pointers request causes the initiator to restore the current pointers to the values existing at the beginning of the current command so the current command can be resent. The "beginning" pointer values point to the first byte of the current Command Descriptor Block, the first byte of the area set aside for status to be returned and the first byte of the area set aside for data associated with the current command. (See paragraph 3.4.2 for a detailed description of operations resulting from the Restore Pointers message).

### 3.4.2 Saved pointers

Saved pointers point to initiator storage locations where command, status and data information are stored for a command that was saved at some point in the past. There is one set of saved pointers for the current command for each target on the interface bus that is currently active (whether or not it is currently connected to the initiator). The saved command pointer always points to the first byte of the Command Descriptor Block (see paragraph 4.2) for the "current" command for each target, the saved status pointer always points to the first byte of the area used for the status associated with the command, and the saved data pointer points to some location (not necessarily the beginning) in the area used for data associated with the command. When a target disconnects the initiator saves the current pointers. Before a target disconnects it may send a Save Data Pointers message to the initiator, which copies the data pointer that is for the current command for that target into the location set aside for the target's saved pointers. When a target reconnects, the initiator performs a restore pointers operation that copies the saved pointers for the reconnected target into the initiator current pointer registers so that the current command for that target may continue its operation from where it left off before disconnecting. If the target had sent a Save Data Pointer message previously, the current data pointer points to the place in the data store area where operations left off. The data pointer otherwise points to the beginning of the data area, unless the data pointers were modified by a MODIFY DATA POINTERS message from the target prior to disconnecting. The MODIFY DATA POINTERS message adds a value to the data pointer that allows data to be taken, upon reconnection, from a location before or after the last byte transferred location.

### 3.5 Message system specification

The message system allows communication between an initiator and target for the purpose of interface management. For the disc drive, the Logical Unit Number (see Section 4.2.2), (LUN) is always zero.

### 3.5.1 General message protocol

A message may be one, two, or multiple bytes in length. One or more messages may be sent during a single MESSAGE phase, but a message may not be split over MESSAGE phases. The initiator is required to end the MESSAGE OUT phase (by negating ATN) when it sends certain messages identified in Table 3.5.2-1. One-byte, Two-byte, and extended message formats are defined. The first byte of the message determines the format as follows:

Value	Message Format
00h	One-Byte Message (Command Complete)
01h	Extended Messages
02h - 1 Fh	One-Byte Messages
20h - 2Fh	Two-Byte Messages
30h - 7Fh	Reserved
80h - FFh	One-Byte Message (Identify)

One-Byte messages consist of a single byte transferred during a MESSAGE phase. The value of the byte determines the message to be performed as defined in Table 3.5.2-1.

Two-byte messages consist of two consecutive bytes transferred during a MESSAGE phase. The value of the first byte determines the message to be performed as defined in Table 3.5.2-1. The second byte is a parameter byte that is used as defined in the message descriptions in Section 3.5.2.

See section 3.5.3.1 for details on the one and two byte messages.

Extended messages consist of from three to 7 bytes transferred during the MESSAGE PHASE. The extended message includes a three byte header and up to 4 extended message argument bytes. See Section 3.5.3.2 for details of the extended messages.

### 3.5.2 Messages - General

The messages supported by the various disc drives are listed in a table in the drive's Product Manual. Table 3.5.2-1 lists Messages that are defined by the SCSI protocol. The message code values are given a direction specification (in-Out). Detailed descriptions follow the table. Messages other than those supported by a disc drive are answered by the drive with a Message Reject message.

Table 3.5.2-1. Message codes

Code	Message Name	Direction		Negate Atn Before Last Ack
01h***	EXTENDED MESSAGES	In	Out	Yes
06h	ABORT		Out	Yes
0Dh	ABORT TAG		Out	Yes
0Ch	BUS DEVICE RESET		Out	Yes
0Eh	CLEAR QUEUE		Out	Yes
00h	COMMAND COMPLETE	In		—
04h	DISCONNECT	In		—
80h+	IDENTIFY	In		—
80h+	IDENTIFY		Out	No
23h	IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE (Two Bytes)	In		—
0Fh	INITIATE RECOVERY	In	Out	Yes
05h	INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR		Out	Yes
0Ah	LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE	In		—
0Bh	LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (With Flag)	In		—
09h	MESSAGE PARITY ERROR		Out	Yes
07h	MESSAGE REJECT [1]	In	Out	Yes
***	MODIFY DATA POINTER	In		—
08h	NO OPERATION		Out	Yes
	Queue Tag Messages (Two Bytes)			
21h	HEAD OF QUEUE TAG		Out	No
22h	ORDERED QUEUE TAG		Out	No
20h	SIMPLE QUEUE TAG	In	Out	No
10h	RELEASE RECOVERY		Out	Yes
03h	RESTORE POINTERS	In		—
02h	SAVE DATA POINTER	In		—
***	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST			
		In	Out	Yes
***	WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST			
		In	Out	Yes
11h	TERMINATE I/O PROCESS		Out	Yes
12h - 1Fh	RESERVED			
24h - 2Fh	RESERVED for two-byte messages			
30h - 7Fh	RESERVED			

---

KEY: In = Target to initiator. Out = Initiator to target  
Yes = Initiator shall negate ATN before last ACK of message  
No = Initiator may or may not negate ACK before last ACK of message. (see attention condition)  
— = Not Applicable  
\*\*\* = Extended message (see Tables 3.5.3-3 and 3.5.3-4)  
80h+ = Codes 80h through FFh are used for IDENTIFY messages  
[1] = The drive does not resend (RETRY) the original message.

The first message sent by the initiator after the SELECTION phase shall be an IDENTIFY, ABORT, or BUS DEVICE RESET message. If a target receives any other message it shall go to BUS FREE phase (unexpected BUS FREE).

If the first message is an IDENTIFY message, then it may be immediately followed by other messages, such as the first of a pair of SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST messages. If tagged queuing is used the queue tag message immediately follows the IDENTIFY message. The IDENTIFY message establishes a logical connection between the initiator and the specified logical unit known as an I T L nexus.

After the RESELECTION phase, the target's first message shall be IDENTIFY. This allows the I T L nexus to be re-established. Only one logical unit shall be identified for any connection; if a target receives a second IDENTIFY message with a logical unit number other than zero during a connection, it shall go to BUS FREE phase (unexpected BUS FREE).

Whenever an I T L nexus is established by an initiator that is allowing disconnection, the initiator shall ensure that the active pointers are equal to the saved pointers for that particular logical unit. An implied restore pointers operation shall occur as a result of a reconnection.

### **3.5.3 Message details**

SCSI message details are defined in the following paragraphs.

#### **3.5.3.1 One and two byte messages**

##### **Abort (06h)**

The *Abort* message is sent from the initiator to the target to clear the present I/O process plus any queued I/O process for the I T L nexus. The target shall go to the BUS FREE phase following successful receipt of this message. Pending data, status, and queued I/O processes for any other I T L nexus shall not be cleared.

If only an I T nexus has been established, the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase. No status or message shall be sent for the I/O process and the I/O process queue shall not be affected.

It is not an error to issue this message to an I T L nexus that does not currently have an active or queued I/O process. Transmission of this message shall terminate any extended contingent allegiance condition that may exist between the I T L nexus.

##### **Notes.**

1. The BUS DEVICE RESET, CLEAR QUEUE, ABORT, and ABORT TAG messages provide a means to clear one or more I/O processes prior to normal termination. The BUS DEVICE RESET message clears all I/O processes for all initiators on all logical units of the target. The CLEAR QUEUE message clears all I/O processes for all initiators on the specified logical unit of the target. The ABORT message clears all I/O processes for the selecting initiator on the specified logical unit of the target. The ABORT TAG message clears the current I/O process only.
2. It is permissible for an initiator to select a target that is currently disconnected for the purpose of sending one of the above message sequences.

**Abort Tag (0Dh)**

The ABORT TAG message shall be implemented if tagged queuing is implemented. The target shall go to the BUS FREE phase following successful receipt of this message. The target shall clear the current I/O process for the I T L nexus. If the target has already started execution of the I/O process, the execution shall be halted. The medium contents may have been modified before the execution was halted. In either case, any pending status or data for the I/O process shall be cleared and no status or ending message shall be sent to the initiator. Pending status, data, and commands for other queued or executing I/O processes shall not be affected. Execution of other I/O processes queued for the I T L nexus shall continue in the normal manner.

**Bus Device Reset (0Ch)**

The BUS DEVICE RESET message is sent from an initiator to direct a target to clear all current I/O processes on that SCSI device. This message forces a hard reset condition to the selected SCSI drive. The target shall go to the BUS FREE phase following successful receipt of this message. The target shall create a Unit Attention condition for all initiators (See 4.6).

**Clear Queue (0Eh)**

The CLEAR QUEUE message shall be implemented if tagged queuing is implemented and may be implemented if untagged queuing is implemented. The target shall go to the BUS FREE phase following successful receipt of this message. The target shall perform an action equivalent to receiving a series of ABORT messages from each initiator. All I/O processes, from all initiators, in the queue for the specified logical unit shall be cleared from the queue. All executing I/O processes shall be halted. The medium may have been altered by partially executed commands. All pending status and data for that logical unit for all initiators shall be cleared. No status or ending message shall be sent for any of the outstanding I/O processes. A unit attention condition shall be generated for all other initiators with I/O processes that either had been executing or were queued for execution for that logical unit. When reporting the Unit Attention condition the additional sense code shall be set to TAGGED COMMANDS CLEARED BY ANOTHER INITIATOR.

**Command Complete (00h)**

The COMMAND COMPLETE message is sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that the execution of a command (or series of linked commands) has terminated and that valid status has been sent to the initiator. After successfully sending this message, the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase by releasing BSY. The target shall consider the message transmission to be successful when it detects the negation of ACK for the COMMAND COMPLETE message with the ATN signal false.

**Notes:** The command may have been executed successfully or unsuccessfully as indicated in the status.

### Disconnect (04h)

The DISCONNECT message is sent from a target to inform an initiator that the present connection is going to be broken (the target plans to disconnect by releasing the BSY signal), but that a later reconnect will be required in order to complete the current I/O process. This message shall not cause the initiator to save the data pointer. After successfully sending this message, the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase by releasing the BSY signal. The target shall consider the message transmission to be successful when it detects the negation of the ACK signal for the DISCONNECT message with the ATN signal false.

Targets which break data transfers into multiple connections shall end each successful connection (except possibly the last) with a SAVE DATA POINTER - DISCONNECT message sequence.

### Identify (80h - FFh)

The IDENTIFY message (Table 3.5.3-1) is sent by either the initiator or the target to establish an I T L nexus.

Table 3.5.3-1. Identify message format

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Identify	DiscPriv	LUN- TAR	Rsvd	Rsvd	LUNTRN		

The identify bit shall be set to one to specify that this is an IDENTIFY message.

A disconnect privilege (DiscPriv) bit of one specifies that the initiator has granted the target the privilege of disconnecting. A DiscPriv bit of zero specifies that the target shall not disconnect. This bit is not defined and shall be set to zero when an IDENTIFY message is sent by a target.

A logical unit target (LUNTAR) bit of zero specifies that the IDENTIFY message is directed to a logical unit. A LUNTAR bit of one specifies that the IDENTIFY message is directed to a target routine that does not involve the logical unit. This bit is not supported by the disc drive and will always be interpreted as a 0.

The logical unit number target routine number (LUNTRN) field specifies a logical unit number if the LUNTAR bit is zero. The LUNTRN field specifies a target routine number if the LUNTAR bit is one. Only the INQUIRY and REQUEST SENSE commands are valid for target routines. If a target receives any other command for a target routine, it shall return CHECK CONDITION status and shall set the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST.

An invalid LUNTRN field terminates the command with a CHECK CONDITION, and in response to a REQUEST SENSE command the disc drive returns sense data with the sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code set to LOGICAL UNIT NOT SUPPORTED.

An IDENTIFY message is invalid if a reserved bit is set to one or if the LUNTAR bit is set to one and the target does not implement target routines. A device may respond to an invalid IDENTIFY message by immediately sending a MESSAGE REJECT message or by returning CHECK CONDITION status. If a CHECK CONDITION status is returned, the sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID BITS IN IDENTIFY MESSAGE FIELD.



Only one logical unit number or target routine number shall be identified per I/O process. The initiator may send one or more IDENTIFY messages during a connection. A second IDENTIFY message with a different value in either the LUNTAR bit or LUNTRN field shall not be issued before a BUS FREE phase has occurred; if a target receives a second IDENTIFY message with a different value in either of these fields, it shall go to BUS FREE phase (unexpected BUS switch to another I/O process. (See the DTDC field of the disconnect-reconnect page (5.2.1-23) for additional controls over disconnection.)

An implied RESTORE POINTERS message shall be performed by the initiator prior to the assertion of the ACK signal on the next phase for an IDENTIFY message sent during reconnection.

#### **Initiator Detected Error(05h)**

The INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message is sent from an initiator to inform a target that an error has occurred that does not preclude the target from retrying the operation. The source of the error may either be related to previous activities on the SCSI bus or may be internal to the initiator and unrelated to any previous SCSI bus activity. Although present pointer integrity is not assured, a RESTORE POINTERS message or a disconnect followed by a reconnect, shall cause the pointers to be restored to their defined prior state.

#### **Linked Command Complete (0Ah)**

The LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE message is sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that the execution of a linked command has completed and that status has been sent. The initiator shall then set the pointers to the initial state for the next linked command.

#### **Linked Command Complete (with Flag) (0Bh)**

The LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (WITH FLAG) message is sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that the execution of a linked command (with the flag bit set to one) has completed and that status has been sent. The initiator shall then set the pointers to the initial state of the next linked command.

#### **Message Parity Error (09h)**

The MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message is sent from the initiator to the target to indicate that the last message byte it received had a parity error.

In order to indicate its intentions of sending this message, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal prior to its release of the ACK signal for the REQ/ACK handshake of the message that has the parity error. This provides an interlock so that the target can determine which message has the parity error. If the target receives this message under any other circumstance, it shall signal a catastrophic error condition by releasing the BSY signal without any further information transfer attempt (see 3.1.1).

**Message Reject (07h)**

The MESSAGE REJECT message is sent from either the initiator or target to indicate that the last message byte it received was inappropriate or has not been implemented.

In order to indicate its intentions of sending this message, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal prior to its release of the ACK signal for the REQ/ACK handshake of the message byte that is to be rejected. If the target receives this message under any other circumstance, it shall reject this message.

When a target sends this message, it shall change to MESSAGE IN phase and send this message prior to requesting additional message bytes from the initiator. This provides an interlock so that the initiator can determine which message byte is rejected.

**Note.** After a target sends a MESSAGE REJECT message and if the ATN signal is still asserted, then it returns to the MESSAGE OUT phase. The subsequent MESSAGE OUT phase begins with the first byte of a message, not the middle of the previous message.

**Modify Data Pointer (01h)**

See Paragraph 3.5.3.2 on Extended Messages

**No-Operation (08h)**

The NO OPERATION message is sent from an initiator in response to a target's request for a message when the initiator does not currently have any other valid message to send.

For example, if the target does not respond to the attention condition until a later phase and at that time the original message is no longer valid the initiator may send the NO OPERATION message when the target enters the MESSAGE OUT phase.

### Queue Tag Messages (20h, 21h or 22h)

When one or more initiators have multiple I/O processes to be queued by a target, each I/O process must have a queue tag associated with it. The queue tag is specified in a Queue Tag Message that must accompany the initiation of each such I/O process. See also Section 4.7.2, "Tagged Queuing".

Table 3.5.3-2. Queue tag message format

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Message Code (20h or 21h or 22h)							
1	Queue Tag							

Table 3.5.3-2 defines the format for the queue tag messages. Those disc drives that implement tagged queuing and use the queue tag messages HEAD OF QUEUE TAG, ORDERED QUEUE TAG, and SIMPLE QUEUE TAG indicate so in their individual Product Manuals.

The queue tag messages are used to specify an identifier, called a queue tag, for an I/O process that establishes the I L Q nexus. The queue tag field is an 8-bit unsigned integer assigned by the initiator during an initial connection. The queue tag for every I/O process for each I\_T L nexus should be unique. If the disc drive receives a queue tag identical to one that is currently in use for the I T L nexus, the disc drive shall abort ALL I/O processes for the initiator and shall return CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ABORTED COMMAND and the additional sense code shall be set to OVERLAPPED COMMANDS ATTEMPTED. Only one status is returned.

**Note.** For each logical unit on each target, each initiator has up to 256 queue tags to assign to I/O processes. A queue tag becomes available for re-assignment when the I/O process ends. Typically drives to which this specification applies queue up to 16 tagged I/O processes concurrently for up to seven initiators on the bus. There could be 16 queue tags for one initiator, or the 16 can be divided among the seven possible initiators, not necessarily evenly. See applicable drive Product Manual for number of queue tags supported.

The appropriate queue tag message shall be sent immediately following the IDENTIFY message and within the same message phase to establish the I T L Q nexus for the I/O process. Only one I T L Q nexus may be established during a connection. If a queue tag message is not sent, then only an I T L nexus is established for the I/O process (untagged command).

If a target attempts to reconnect using an invalid queue tag, then the initiator should respond with an ABORT TAG message.

- **Head of Queue Tag (21h)**

The *Head of Queue Tag* message specifies that the I/O process be placed first in that logical unit's queue for execution. An I/O process already being executed by the target shall not be pre-empted. A subsequent I/O process received with a HEAD OF QUEUE TAG message shall be placed at the head of the queue for execution in last-in, first-out order.

- **Ordered Queue Tag (22h)**

The ORDERED QUEUE TAG message specifies that the I/O process be placed in the disc drive's I/O process queue for execution in the order received, with respect to other commands with ORDERED QUEUE TAG messages, except for I/O processes received with a HEAD OF QUEUE TAG message, which are placed at the head of the queue.

- **Simple Queue Tag (20h)**

The SIMPLE QUEUE TAG message specifies that the I/O process be placed in the disc drive's I/O process queue for execution. The order of execution can be arranged by the disc drive in accordance with an algorithm. The SIMPLE QUEUE TAG message is also sent by the target when reconnecting to the initiator.

**Restore Pointers (03h)**

The RESTORE POINTERS message is sent from a target to direct the initiator to restore the most recently saved pointers (for the current nexus) to the active state. Pointers to the command, data, and status locations for the nexus shall be restored to the active pointers. Command and status pointers shall be restored to the beginning of the present command and status areas. The data pointer shall be restored to the value at the beginning of the data area in the absence of a SAVE DATA POINTER message or to the value at the point where the last SAVE DATA POINTER message occurred for that nexus.

**Save Data Pointer (02h)**

The SAVE DATA POINTER message is sent from a target to direct the initiator to save a copy of the present active data pointer for the current nexus. (See 3.4 for a definition of pointers.)

**Synchronous Data Transfer (01h)**

See Paragraph 3.5.3.2 on EXTENDED MESSAGE.

**Terminate I/O Process (11h)**

This message is supported only on those drives having it as a factory installed option.

The Terminate I/O Process message is sent from the initiator to the target to terminate the current I/O process without corrupting the medium.

With the following exceptions, the target shall terminate the current I/O process and return COMMAND TERMINATED status. The sense key shall be set to NO SENSE. The additional sense code and qualifier are set to I/O PROCESS TERMINATED.

If the associated I/O process involves a data phase, the target shall set the valid bit in the sense data to one and set the information field as follows:

- 1) If the command descriptor block specifies an allocation length or parameter list length, the information field shall be set to the difference (residue) between the number of bytes successfully transferred and the requested length.
- 2) If the command descriptor block specifies a transfer length field, the information field shall be set as defined in the REQUEST SENSE command (see 5.1.1.2).

If an error is detected for the associated I/O process the target shall ignore the TERMINATE I/O PROCESS message.

If the operation requested for the associated I/O process has been completed but status has not been returned, the target shall ignore the TERMINATE I/O PROCESS message.

If the target does not support this message or is unable to stop the current I/O process, it shall send a MESSAGE REJECT message to the initiator and continue the I/O process in a normal manner.

The effect of a TERMINATE I/O PROCESS message on the command queue depends on the queue error recovery option specified in the control mode page (see Table 5.2.1-28) and on whether or not a contingent allegiance condition is generated.

### 3.5.3.2 Extended message (01h)

Extended messages are messages that require more than two bytes to send the necessary information. The Extended messages supported by the disc drive are Modify Data Pointer and Synchronous Data Transfer. These two are described in detail in the following paragraphs.

#### MODIFY DATA POINTERS MESSAGE

Table 3.5.3-3. Modify data pointer

Byte	Value	Description
0	01h	Extended message
1	05h	Extended message length
2	00h	MODIFY DATA POINTER code
3		Argument (Most Significant Byte)
4		Argument
5		Argument
6		Argument (Least Significant Byte)

The MODIFY DATA POINTER message (Table 3.5.3-3) is sent from the target to the initiator and requests that the signed argument be added (two's complement) to the value of the current data pointer.

## SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST MESSAGE

Table 3.5.3-4. Synchronous data transfer request

Byte	Value	Description
0	01h	Extended message
1	03h	Extended message length
2	01n	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST code
3	m	Transfer period (m times 4 nanoseconds) [1]
4	x	REQ/ACK offset

[1] See Tables in the individual disc drive Product Manuals, interface section, for a list of transfer periods supported by the drive described therein.

A SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (SDTR) message (Table 3.5.3-4) exchange shall be initiated by a SCSI device whenever a previously arranged data transfer agreement may have become invalid. The agreement becomes invalid after any condition that may leave the data transfer agreement in an indeterminate state such as

1. after a hard reset condition
2. after a BUS DEVICE RESET message and
3. after a power cycle.

In addition, a SCSI device may initiate an SDTR message exchange whenever it is appropriate to negotiate a new data transfer agreement (either synchronous or asynchronous). SCSI devices that are capable of synchronous data transfers shall not respond to an SDTR message with a MESSAGE REJECT message.

The SDTR message exchange establishes the permissible transfer periods and REQ/ACK offsets for all logical units on the two devices.

The transfer period is the minimum time allowed between leading edges of successive REQ pulses and of successive ACK pulses to meet the device requirements for successful reception of data.

The REQ/ACK offset is the maximum number of REQ pulses allowed to be outstanding before the leading edge of its corresponding ACK pulse is received at the target. This value is chosen to prevent overflow conditions in the device's reception buffer and offset counter. A REQ/ACK offset value of zero shall indicate asynchronous data transfer mode; a value of FFh shall indicate unlimited REQ/ACK offset. The REQ/ACK offset value supported by each drive is listed in each drive product manual, Volume 1.

The originating device (the device that sends the first of the pair of SDTR messages) sets its values according to the rules above to permit it to receive data successfully. If the responding device can also receive data successfully with these values, it returns the same values in its SDTR message. If it requires a larger transfer period, smaller REQ/ACK offset, or both in order to receive data successfully, it substitutes values in its SDTR message as required, returning unchanged any value not required to be changed. Each device when transmitting data shall respect the limits set by the other's SDTR message but it is permitted to transfer data with larger transfer periods, small REQ/ACK offsets, or both than specified in the other's SDTR message. The successful completion of an exchange of SDTR messages implies an agreement as follows:

**Responding Device SDTR**

<b>SDTR response</b>	<b>Implied Agreement</b>
1. Non-zero REQ/ACK offset	Each device transmits data with a transfer period equal to or less than the values received in the other device's SDTR message.
2. REQ/ACK offset equal to zero	Asynchronous transfer
3. MESSAGE REJECT MESSAGE	Asynchronous transfer
4. No Response from Initiator to disc drive Initiated SDTR	Asynchronous transfer

If the initiator recognizes that negotiation is required, it asserts the ATN signal and sends an SDTR message to begin the negotiating process. After successfully completing the MESSAGE OUT phase, the target shall respond with the proper SDTR message. If an abnormal condition prevents the target from returning an appropriate response, both devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

Following target response (1) above, the implied agreement for synchronous operation shall be considered to be negated by both the initiator and the target if the initiator asserts the ATN signal and the first message out is either MESSAGE PARITY ERROR or MESSAGE REJECT. In this case, both devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices. For the MESSAGE PARITY ERROR case, the implied agreement shall be reinstated if a retransmittal of the second of the pair of messages is successfully accomplished. After one retry attempt, if the target receives a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message, it shall terminate the retry activity. This may be done either by changing to any other information transfer phase and transferring at least one byte of information or by going to the BUS FREE phase (see 3.1.1). The initiator shall accept such action as aborting the negotiation, and both devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

If the target recognizes that negotiation is required, it sends an SDTR message to the initiator. Prior to releasing the ACK signal on the last byte of the SDTR message from the target, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal and respond with its SDTR message or with a REJECT MESSAGE. If an abnormal condition prevents the initiator from returning an appropriate response, both devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

Following an initiator's responding SDTR message, an implied agreement for synchronous operation shall not be considered to exist until the target leaves the MESSAGE OUT PHASE, indicating that the target has accepted the negotiation. After one retry attempt, if the target has not received the initiator's responding SDTR message, it shall go to the BUS FREE phase without any further information transfer attempt (see 3.1.1). This indicates that a catastrophic error condition has occurred. Both devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

If, following an initiator's responding SDTR message, the target shifts to MESSAGE IN phase and the first message in is MESSAGE REJECT, the implied agreement shall be considered to be negated and both devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

The implied synchronous agreement shall remain in effect until a BUS DEVICE RESET message is received, until a hard reset condition occurs, or until one of the two SCSI devices elects to modify the agreement. The default data transfer mode is asynchronous data transfer mode. The default data transfer mode is entered at power on, after a BUS DEVICE RESET message, or after a hard reset condition.

**Note.** Renegotiation at every selection is not recommended, since a significant performance impact is likely.

The REQ/ACK offsets supported by a particular disc drive are given in a Table in that drives individual Product Manual (Vol. 1).

### Wide Data Transfer Request Message

Table 3.5.3-5. Wide data transfer message

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Extended message (01h)							
1	Extended message length (02h)							
2	Wide Data Transfer Request code (03h)							
3	Transfer Width Exponent							

A WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (WDTR) message (Table 3.5.3-5) exchange shall be initiated by an SCSI device whenever a previously-arranged transfer width agreement may have become invalid. The agreement becomes invalid after any condition which may leave the data transfer agreement in an indeterminate state such as:

- 1) after a hard reset condition;
- 2) after a BUS DEVICE RESET message and;
- 3) after a power cycle.

In addition, an SCSI device may initiate an WDTR message exchange whenever it is appropriate to negotiate a new transfer width agreement. SCSI devices that are capable of wide data transfers (greater than eight bits) shall not respond to an WDTR message with a MESSAGE REJECT message.

The WDTR message exchange establishes an agreement between two SCSI devices on the width of the data path to be used for DATA phase transfers between the two devices. This agreement applies to DATA IN and DATA OUT phases only. All other information transfer phases shall use an eight-bit data path.

If an SCSI device implements both wide data transfer option and synchronous data transfer option, then it shall negotiate the wide data transfer agreement prior to negotiating the synchronous data transfer agreement. If a synchronous data transfer agreement is in effect, then an SCSI device that accepts a WDTR message shall reset the synchronous agreement to asynchronous mode.



Byte 3 selects the transfer width in bytes. The number of bytes transfer width is  $2^m$  bytes, where  $m$  is the Transfer Width Exponent given in byte 3. The transfer width that is established applies to all logical units on both SCSI devices. Valid transfer widths are 8 bits ( $m = 00h$ ) and 16 bits ( $m = 01h$ ). Values of  $m$  greater than  $01h$  are not applicable to drives supported by this manual.

The originating SCSI device (the SCSI device that sends the first of the pair of WDTR messages) sets its transfer width value to the maximum data path width it elects to accommodate. If the responding SCSI device can also accommodate this transfer width, it returns the same value in its WDTR message. If it requires a smaller transfer width, it substitutes the smaller value in its WDTR message. The successful completion of an exchange of WDTR messages implies an agreement as follows:

<b>Responding Device WDTR Response</b>	<b>Implied Agreement</b>
(1) Non-zero transfer width	Each device transmits and receives data with a transfer width equal to the responding SCSI device's transfer width.
(2) Transfer width equal to zero	Eight-bit Data transfer
(3) MESSAGE REJECT message	Eight-bit Data transfer

If the initiator recognizes that negotiation is required, it asserts the ATN signal and sends a WDTR message to begin the negotiating process. After successfully completing the MESSAGE OUT phase, the target shall respond with the proper WDTR message. If an abnormal condition prevents the target from returning an appropriate response, both devices shall go to eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

Following target response (1) above, the implied agreement for wide data transfers shall be considered to be negated by both the initiator and the target if the initiator asserts ATN and the first message out is either MESSAGE PARITY ERROR or MESSAGE REJECT. In this case, both devices shall go to eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices. For the MESSAGE PARITY ERROR case, the implied agreement shall be reinstated if a re-transmittal of the second of the pair of messages is successfully accomplished. After a vendor-specific number of retry attempts (greater than zero), if the target receives a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message, it shall terminate the retry activity. This may be done either by changing to any other information transfer phase and transferring at least one byte of information or by going to the BUS FREE phase (see 3.1.1). The initiator shall accept such action as aborting the negotiation, and both devices shall go to eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

If the target recognizes that negotiation is required, it sends a WDTR message to the initiator. Prior to releasing the ACK signal on the last byte of the WDTR message from the target, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal and respond with its WDTR message or with a MESSAGE REJECT message. If an abnormal condition prevents the initiator from returning an appropriate response, both devices shall go to eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

Following an initiator's responding WDTR message, an implied agreement for wide data transfer operation shall not be considered to exist until the target leaves the MESSAGE OUT phase, indicating that the target has accepted the negotiation. After a vendor-specific number of retry attempts (greater than zero), if the target has not received the initiator's responding WDTR message, it shall go to the BUS FREE phase without any further information transfer attempt (see 3.1.1). This indicates that a catastrophic error condition has occurred. Both devices shall go to eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

If, following an initiator's responding WDTR message, the target shifts to MESSAGE IN phase and the first message in is MESSAGE REJECT, the implied agreement shall be considered to be negated and both devices shall go to eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

The implied transfer width agreement shall remain in effect until a BUS DEVICE RESET message is received, until a hard reset condition occurs, or until one of the two SCSI devices elects to modify the agreement. The default data transfer width is eight-bit data transfer mode. The default data transfer mode is entered at power on, after a BUS DEVICE RESET message, or after a hard reset condition.

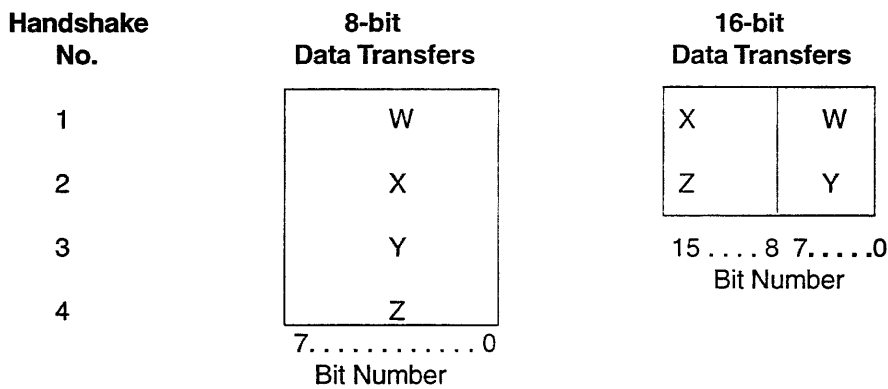
**16-bit Wide data Transfer**

Wide data transfer is optional and may be used in the DATA phase only if a nonzero wide data transfer agreement is in effect. The messages determine the use of wide mode by both SCSI devices and establish a data path width to be used during the DATA phase. Default for the drives that have wide data transfer capability is 8-bit data transfers.

During 16-bit wide data transfers, the first and second logical data bytes for each data phase shall be transferred across the DB(7-0,P) and DB(15-8,P1) signals respectively, on the 68 conductor cable used by drives that support the wide data transfer feature. Subsequent pairs of data bytes are likewise transferred in parallel across the 68 conductor cable.

To illustrate the order of transferring data bytes across the interface assume an example four byte data transfer of bytes W, X, Y and Z.

When transferring bytes W, X, Y and Z across the 8 or 16-bit bus widths, they are transferred in the order shown below:



**Figure 3.5.3-1. Wide SCSI byte ordering**

If the last data byte transferred for a command does not fall on the DB(15-8,P1) signals for a 16-bit wide transfer, then the values of the remaining higher-numbered bits are undefined. However, parity bits for these undefined bytes shall be valid for whatever data is placed on the bus.

**Ignore Wide Residue**

The Ignore Wide Residue message is not an extended message, but it is placed here in context with the 16-bit Wide Data Transfer message, since it applies when the 16-bit wide data transfer capability is used.

**Table 3.5.3-6. Ignore wide residue message format**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Message Code (23h)							
1	Ignore (01h, 02h, 03h)							

The IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE message (Table 3.5.3-6) shall be sent from a target to indicate that the number of valid bytes sent during the last REQ/ACK handshake of a DATA IN phase is less than the negotiated transfer width. The ignore field indicates the number of invalid data bytes transferred. This message shall be sent immediately following that DATA IN phase and prior to any other messages. The ignore field is defined in Table 3.5.3-7.

**Note.** More than one IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE message may occur during an I/O process.

**Table 3.5.3-7. Ignore field definition**

Ignore	Invalid Data Bits 16-bit Transfers
00h	Reserved
01h	DB(15-8)
02h	Reserved
03h	Reserved
04h - FFh	Reserved

Even though a byte is invalid its corresponding parity bit shall be valid for the value transferred.



## 4.0 SCSI commands

This section defines the SCSI command structure and describes a typical SCSI bus procedure involving a command, status return and message interchange.

The command structure defined herein provides for a contiguous set of logical blocks of data to be transferred across the interface. The number of logical data blocks to be transferred is defined in the command. Initiator commands to the disc drive are structured in accordance with the requirements imposed by the disc drive physical characteristics. These physical characteristics are reported to the initiator in response to an inquiry command.

A single command may transfer one or more logical blocks of data. The disc drive may disconnect, if allowed by the initiators, from the SCSI bus to allow activity by other SCSI devices while the disc drive performs operations within itself.

Upon command completion (which may be executed either successfully or unsuccessfully), the disc drive returns a status byte to the initiator. Since most error and exception conditions cannot be adequately described with a single status byte, one status code that can be sent as the status byte is called Check Condition. It indicates that additional information is available. The initiator may issue a Request Sense command to request the return of the additional information as part of the Data In phase of the command.

### 4.1 Command implementation requirements

The first byte of any SCSI command contains an operation code as defined in this document. Three bits (bits 7-5) of the second byte of each SCSI command specify the logical unit if it is not specified using the Identify Message (see Paragraph 3.5.3.1). Only logic unit zero is valid for disc drives to which this specification applies. The last byte of all SCSI commands shall contain a control byte as defined in Paragraph 4.2.6.

#### 4.1.1 Reserved

Reserved bits, bytes, fields, and code values are set aside for future standardization. Their use and interpretation may be specified by future revisions to this specification. A reserved bit, field, or byte shall be set to zero, or in accordance with a future revision to this specification. A disc drive that receives a reserved code value shall terminate the command with a Check Condition status and the Sense Key shall be set to Illegal Request. It shall also be acceptable for the disc drive to interpret the bit, field, byte, or code value in accordance with a future revision to this specification.

### 4.2 Command descriptor block (CDB)

A request by an initiator to a disc drive is performed by sending a Command Descriptor Block (CDB) to the disc drive. For several commands, the request is accompanied by a list of parameters sent during the Data Out phase. See the specific commands for detailed information.

The Command Descriptor Block always has an operation code as the first byte of the command. This is followed by a logical unit number, command parameters (if any), and a control byte.

For all commands, if there is an invalid parameter in the Command Descriptor Block, the disc drive shall terminate the command without altering the medium.

The format description for the Command Descriptor Block as supported by the disc drive is shown in Tables 4.2-1, 4.2-2 and 4.2-3.

### 4.2.1 Operation code

The operation code (Table 4.2-1) of the Command descriptor Block has a group code field and a command code field. The three bit group code field provides for eight groups of command codes. The five bit command code field provides for thirty two command codes in each group. Thus, a total of 256 possible operation codes exist. Operation codes are defined in Section 5.

For the disc drive the group code specifies one of the following groups:

Group 0 - Six byte commands (see Table 4.2-2).

Group 1 - Ten byte commands (see Table 4.2-3).

Group 2 - Ten byte commands (see Table 4.2-3).

Group 3 - Reserved

Group 4 - Reserved

Group 5 - Twelve-byte commands

Group 6 - Vendor specific

Group 7 - Vendor Specific

**Table 4.2-1. Operation Code Format for CDB**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Group Code			Command Code				

**Table 4.2-2. Typical Command Descriptor Block for Six Byte Commands**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code							
1	0	0	0	Logical Block Address (if req.) (MSB)				
2	Logical Block Address (if required)							
3	Logical Block Address (if required) (LSB)							
4	Transfer Length (if required)							
5	Control Byte							

Table 4.2-3. Typical Command Descriptor Block for Ten Byte Commands

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code							
1	0	Logical Unit No. 0	0	Reserved				Rel Adr
2	Logical Block Address(if required)(MSB)							
3	Logical Block Address (if required)							
4	Logical Block Address (if required)							
5	Logical Block Address (if required)(LSB)							
6	Reserved							
7	Transfer Length (if required)(MSB) [1]							
8	Transfer Length (if required)(LSB) [1]							
9	Control Byte [1]							

[1] For Twelve byte commands there are two more bytes of transfer length, bytes 9 and 10, and the control byte is byte 11.

#### 4.2.2 Logical Unit Number (LUN)

The logical unit number (LUN) addresses one of up to eight physical devices or virtual devices attached to a target. The only valid LUN number for the disc drives supported by this manual is Zero.

The LUN in the CDB is provided for systems that do not implement the Identify Message. If an Identify message is sent to the disc drive, the disc drive will use the LUN number specified in this message. In this case, the disc drive shall ignore the LUN specified within the command descriptor block.

The disc drive will reject commands that select an invalid LUN (except Request Sense and Inquiry) by requesting and accepting the command bytes, then going to Status phase and sending Check Condition status. Note that the LUN is sent in the LUN field of a CDB (if no Identify message has been received for this selection) or by the LUN field of an Identify message.

Request Sense commands selecting an invalid LUN will receive a Sense Data block with the Illegal Request Sense Key and an Invalid LUN Error Code. Inquiry commands will return Inquiry Data with the Peripheral Device Type field set to Logical Unit Not Present (7Fh). Request Sense and Inquiry commands will not send Check Condition status in response to an invalid LUN selection.

### 4.2.3 Logical Block Address

The logical block address in the command descriptor block shall begin with block zero and be continuous up to the last logical block on disc drive.

Group 0 command descriptor block contains 21 bit logical block addresses. Groups 1 & 2 command descriptor blocks contain 32 bit logical block addresses.

The logical block concept implies that the initiator and target shall have previously established the number of data bytes per logical block. This may be established through the use of the Read Capacity command or the Mode Sense command or by prior arrangement.

The maximum logical block address for the disc drive which is accessible by the Initiator is defined in Read Capacity Command data in section 5.2.2.1.

### 4.2.4 Relative address bit

Relative addressing is a technique useful in accessing structured data in a uniform manner. Relative addressing is only allowed when commands are linked. Details are given with those commands that use this feature.

### 4.2.5 Transfer length

The Transfer Length specifies the amount of data to be transferred, usually the number of blocks. For several commands the transfer length indicates the requested number of bytes to be sent as defined in the command description. For these commands the transfer length field may be identified by a different name. See the following descriptions and the individual command descriptions for further information.

Commands that use one byte for Transfer Length allow up to 256 blocks of data to be transferred by one command. A Transfer Length value of 1 to 255 indicates the number of blocks that shall be transferred. A value of zero indicates 256 blocks.

Commands that use two bytes for Transfer Length allow up to 65,535 blocks of data to be transferred by one command. In this case, a Transfer Length of zero indicates that no data transfer shall take place. A value of 1 to 65,535 indicates the number of blocks that shall be transferred.

For several commands more than two bytes are allocated for Transfer Length. Refer to the specific command description for further information.

The Transfer Length of the commands that are used to send a list of parameters to a disc drive is called the Parameter List Length. The Parameter List Length specifies the number of bytes sent during the Data Out phase.

The Transfer Length of the commands used to return sense data (e.g. Request Sense, Inquiry, Mode Sense, etc) to an initiator is called the Allocation Length. The Allocation Length specifies the number of bytes that the initiator has allocated for returned data. The disc drive shall terminate the Data In phase when Allocation Length bytes have been transferred or when all available data have been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.



### 4.2.6 Control byte

Normally all zeros. Typically, the disc drive does not support the Flag and Link bit functions. It can be supported as a special factory installed option.

Table 4.2.6-1. Control byte

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
LAST	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag* 0 or 1	Link* 0 or 1

- | *Bit | Description   |
|------|---|
| 1    | Flag bit - If the link bit is zero, then the flag bit shall be set to zero. If the link bit is one, and if the command terminates successfully, the target shall send LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE message if the flag bit is zero and shall send LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (WITH FLAG) message if the flag bit is one. Typically, this bit is used to cause an interrupt in the initiator between linked commands.  |
| 0    | Link bit - This bit is set to one to indicate that the initiator desires an automatic link to the next command upon successful completion of the current command. Implementation of linked commands is optional. If the link bit is one, upon successful termination of the command, the target shall return INTERMEDIATE status and shall then send one of the two messages defined by the flag bit (above). |

### 4.3 Status

A status byte shall be sent from the target to the initiator during the STATUS phase at the termination of each command as specified in Tables 4.3-1 and 4.3-2 unless the command is cleared by one of the following conditions:

1. an ABORT message
2. a BUS DEVICE RESET message
3. a hard reset condition
4. an unexpected BUS FREE condition (see 3.1.1)
5. an ABORT TAG message
6. a CLEAR QUEUE message

Table 4.3-1. Status byte

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Status Byte Code				Rsvd	

Table 4.3-2. Status byte code bit values

Bits of Status Byte								Status Represented
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R	R	0	0	0	0	0	R	Good
R	R	0	0	0	0	1	R	Check Condition
R	R	0	0	0	1	0	R	Condition Met/Good
R	R	0	0	1	0	0	R	Busy
R	R	0	1	0	0	0	R	Intermediate/Good
R	R	0	1	0	1	0	R	Intermediate/Condition Met
R	R	0	1	1	0	0	R	Reservation Conflict
R	R	1	0	0	0	1	R	Command Terminated
R	R	1	0	1	0	0	R	Queue Full
All Other Codes								Reserved

**Key:** R - Reserved bit (must be zero for disc drive)

A description of the status byte codes is given below.

**Good** - This status indicates that the target has successfully completed the command.

**Check Condition** - Any error, exception, or abnormal condition that causes sense data to be set, shall cause a CHECK CONDITION status. The REQUEST SENSE command should be issued following a CHECK CONDITION status, to determine the nature of the condition.

**Condition Met** - The SEARCH DATA commands shall return this status whenever a search condition is satisfied. This status does not break a chain of linked commands. The logical block address of the logical block that satisfies the search may be determined with a REQUEST SENSE command.

**Busy** - The target is busy. This status shall be returned whenever a target is unable to process the command from an otherwise acceptable initiator. BUSY status shall be returned if the initiator has not granted the disconnect privilege and attempts to queue a command or if the initiator rejects the disconnect message and the queue is not empty. BUSY status shall also be returned if a Change Definition command is received requesting that the disc drive change from SCSI-2 mode to SCSI-1 mode and the queue is not empty, or if commands from other initiators or tagged commands from the contingent host are received while a Contingent Allegiance condition exists. The normal initiator recovery action is to issue the command again at a later time.

**Intermediate** - This status will be returned for every command in a series of linked commands (except the last command), unless an error, exception or abnormal condition causes a CHECK CONDITION status, a RESERVATION CONFLICT STATUS OR A COMMAND TERMINATED status to be set. If this status is not returned, the chain of linked commands is broken; no further commands in the series are executed.

**Reservation Conflict** - This status shall be returned whenever a SCSI device attempts to access a logical unit or an extent within a logical unit that is reserved with a conflicting reservation type for another SCSI device (see RESERVE and RESERVE UNIT command). The normal initiator recovery action is to issue the command again at a later time.

**Command Terminated** - This status shall be returned whenever the target terminates the current I/O process after receiving a TERMINATE I/O PROCESS message (see 3.5.2). This status also indicates that a contingent allegiance condition has occurred (see 3.2.3). This message is not supported on standard OEM drives, but is a factory installed option.

**Queue Full** - This status shall be implemented if tagged queuing is implemented. This status is returned when a command is received and the command can not be accepted because the command queue is full. The command is not executed.

#### **4.4 Command examples**

##### **4.4.1 Single command example**

A typical operation on the SCSI bus is likely to include a single Read command to a peripheral device such as the disc drive. This operation is described in detail starting with a request from the initiator. This example assumes that no linked commands and no malfunctions or errors occur and is illustrated in Figure 4.4-1.

The initiator has active pointers and a set of stored pointers representing active disconnected SCSI devices (an initiator without disconnect capability does not require stored pointers). The initiator sets up the active pointers for the operation requested, arbitrates for the SCSI bus, and selects the disc drive. Once this process is completed, the disc drive assumes control of the operation.

The disc drive obtains the command from the initiator (in this case, a Read command). The disc drive interprets the command and executes it. For this command, the disc drive reads the requested data from the Disc Media and sends this data to the initiator. After sending the read data to the initiator, the disc drive sends a status byte to the initiator. To end the operation, the disc drive sends a Command Complete message to the initiator and then goes to the Bus Free state.

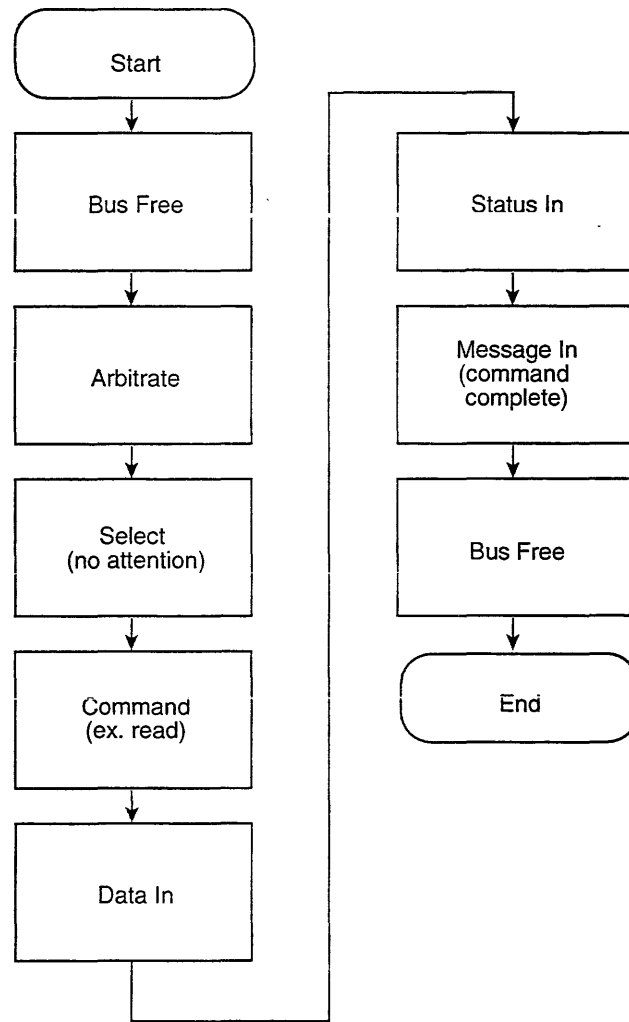


Figure 4.4-1. Single command example

#### 4.4.2 Disconnect example

In the single command example, the length of time necessary to obtain the data may require a time consuming physical seek. In order to improve system throughput, the disc drive may disconnect from the initiator, freeing the SCSI bus to allow other requests to be sent to other SCSI devices. To do this, the initiator must be reselectable and capable of restoring the pointers upon reconnection. The disc drive must be capable of arbitrating for the SCSI bus and reselecting the initiator. See Figure 4.4-2.

After the disc drive has received the Read command (and has determined that there will be a delay), it disconnects by sending a Disconnect message and releasing BSY (goes to BUS Free state).

When the data is ready to be transferred the disc drive reconnects to the initiator, the initiator restores the pointers to their most recently saved values (which, in this case, are the initial values) and the disc drive continues (as in the single command example) to finish the operation. The initiator recognizes that the operation is complete when a Command Complete message is received.

If the disc drive elects to disconnect after transferring part of the data (e.g. while crossing a cylinder boundary), it sends a Save Data Pointer message and a Disconnect message to the initiator and then disconnects. When reconnection is completed, the initiator restores the current data pointer to the value it was immediately before the Save Data Pointer message.

On those occasions when an error or exception condition occurs and the disc drive elects to repeat the information transfer, the disc drive repeats the transfer by issuing a Restore Pointers message or it disconnects without issuing a Save Data Pointer message. When reconnection is completed, the most recently saved pointer values are restored.

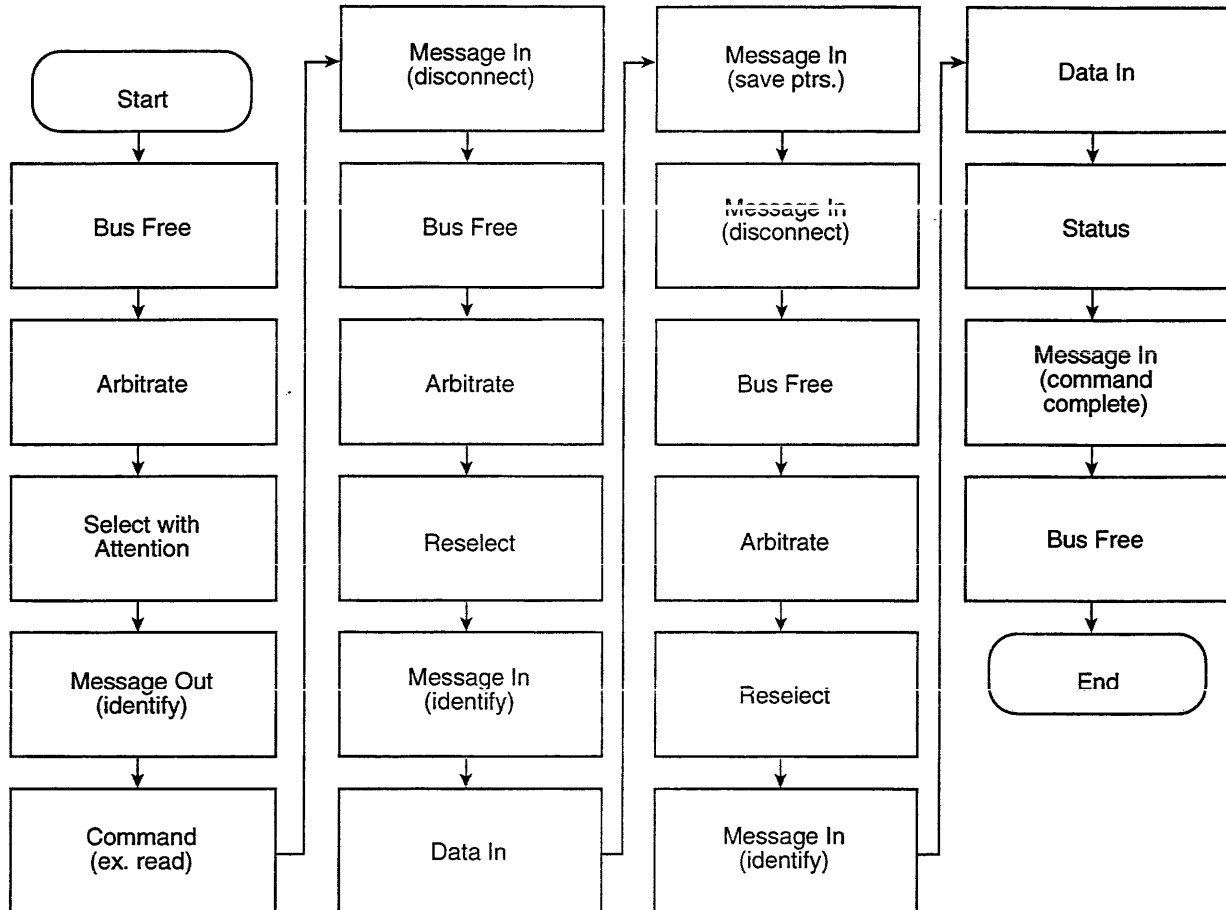
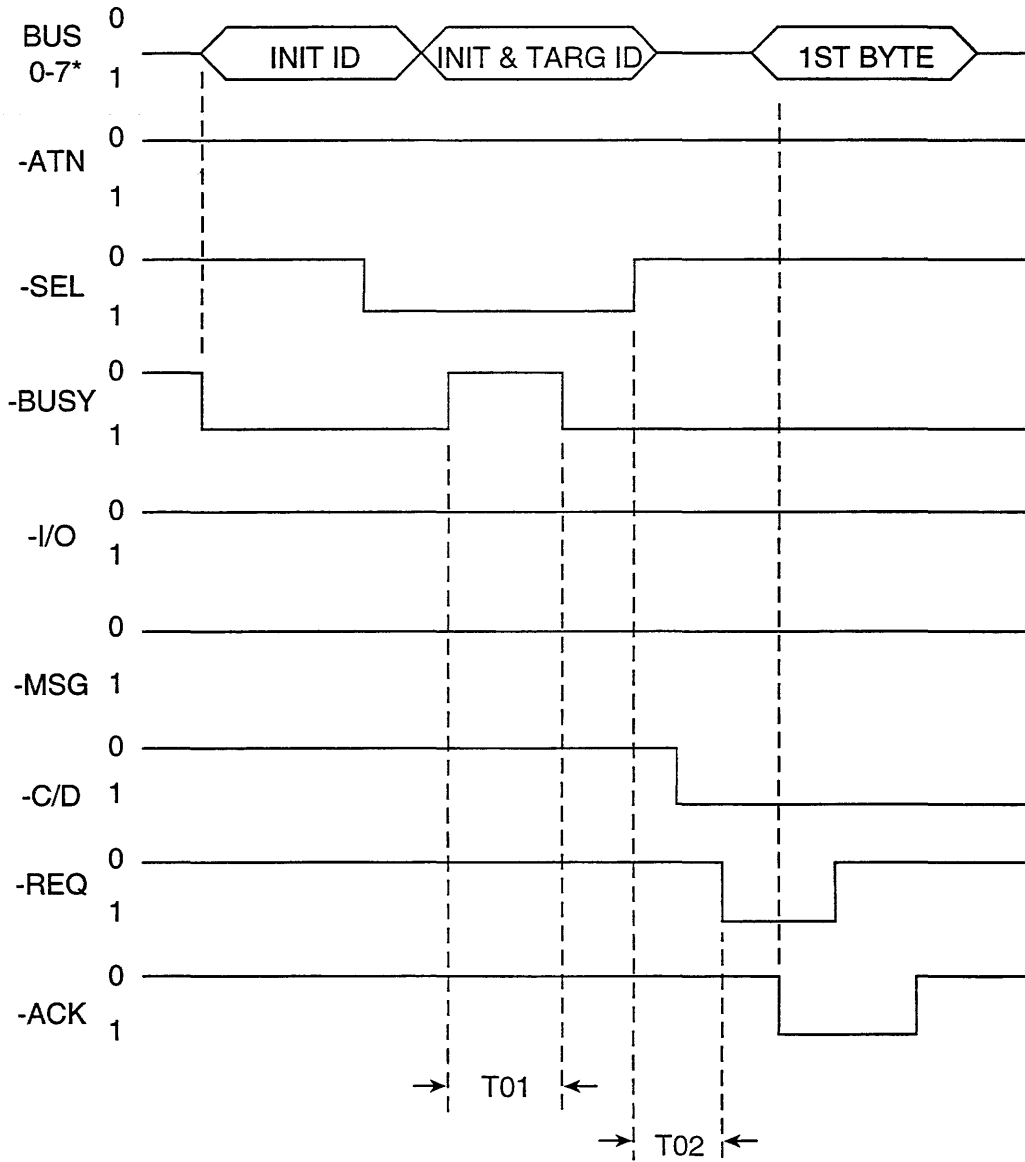


Figure 4.4-2. Disconnect example

4.5 Timing examples

Times (T00 through T35) necessary to define performance are listed in the product manuals for each individual drive in Section 11.7. Timing waveforms to define these times are illustrated in Tables 4.5-1 through 4.5-15.

Table 4.5-1. Arbitration, Selection, (No ATN), and Command Phase



\* and 8-15 if applicable

Table 4.5-2. Arbitration, Selection (with ATN), and Message Out

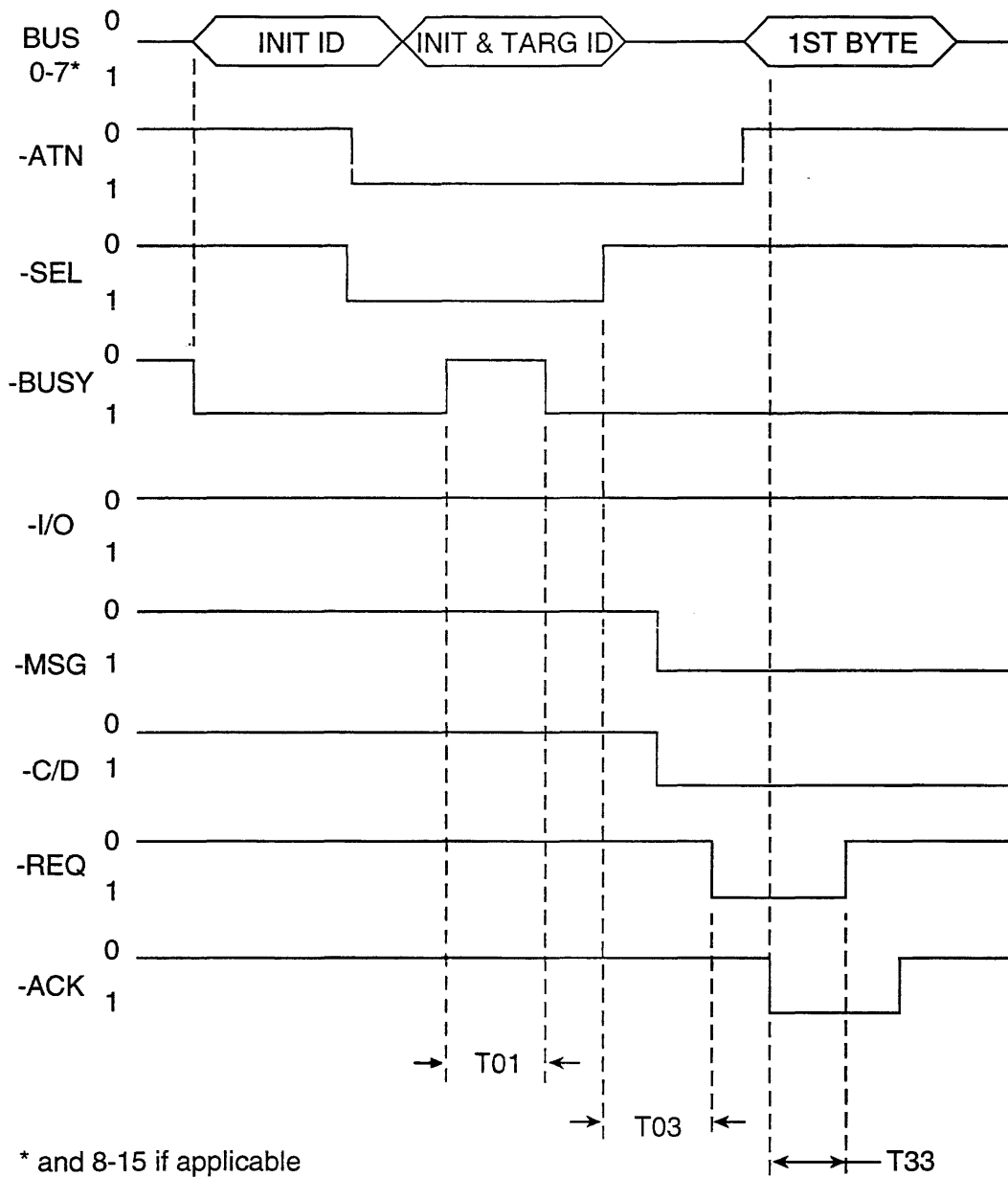
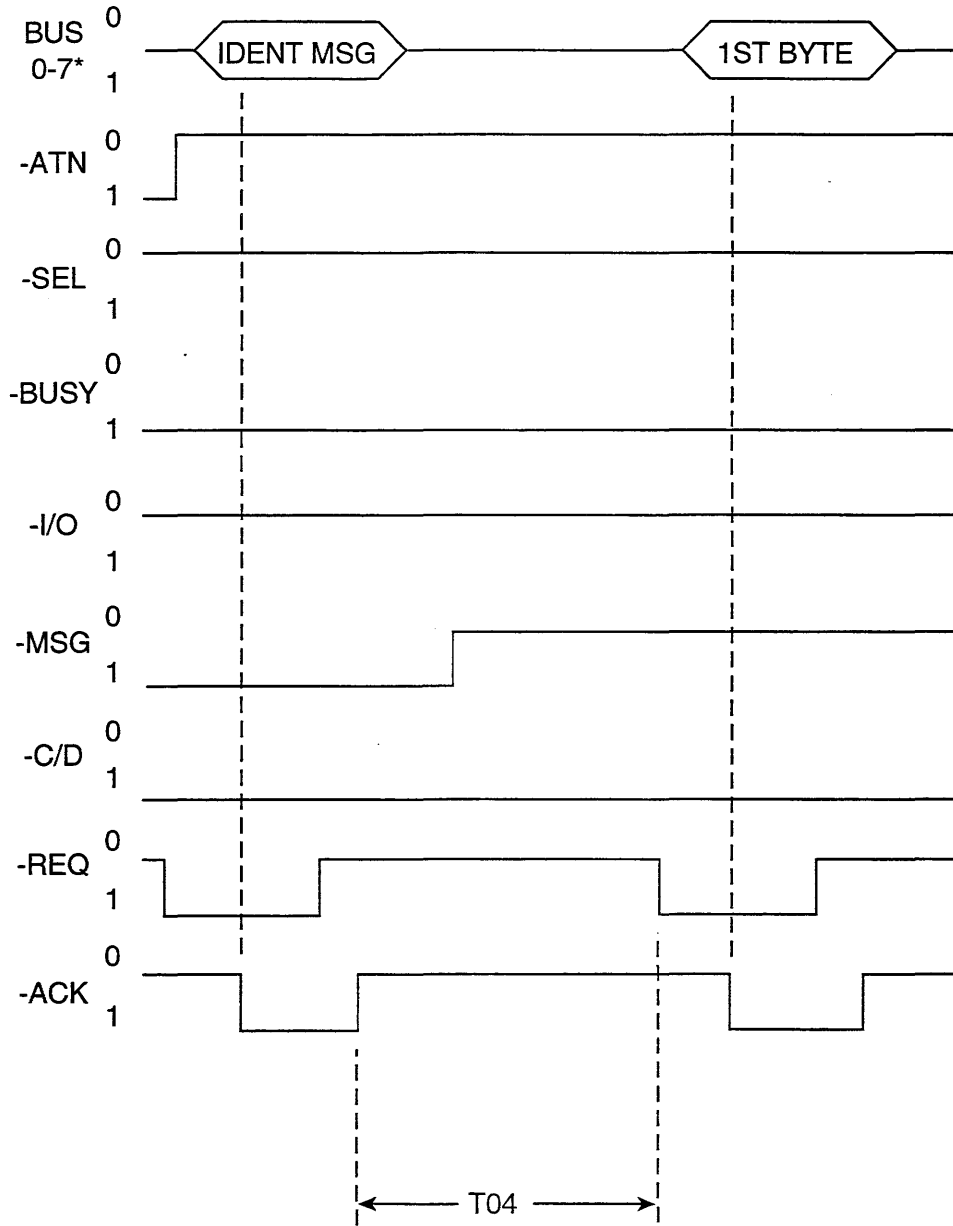


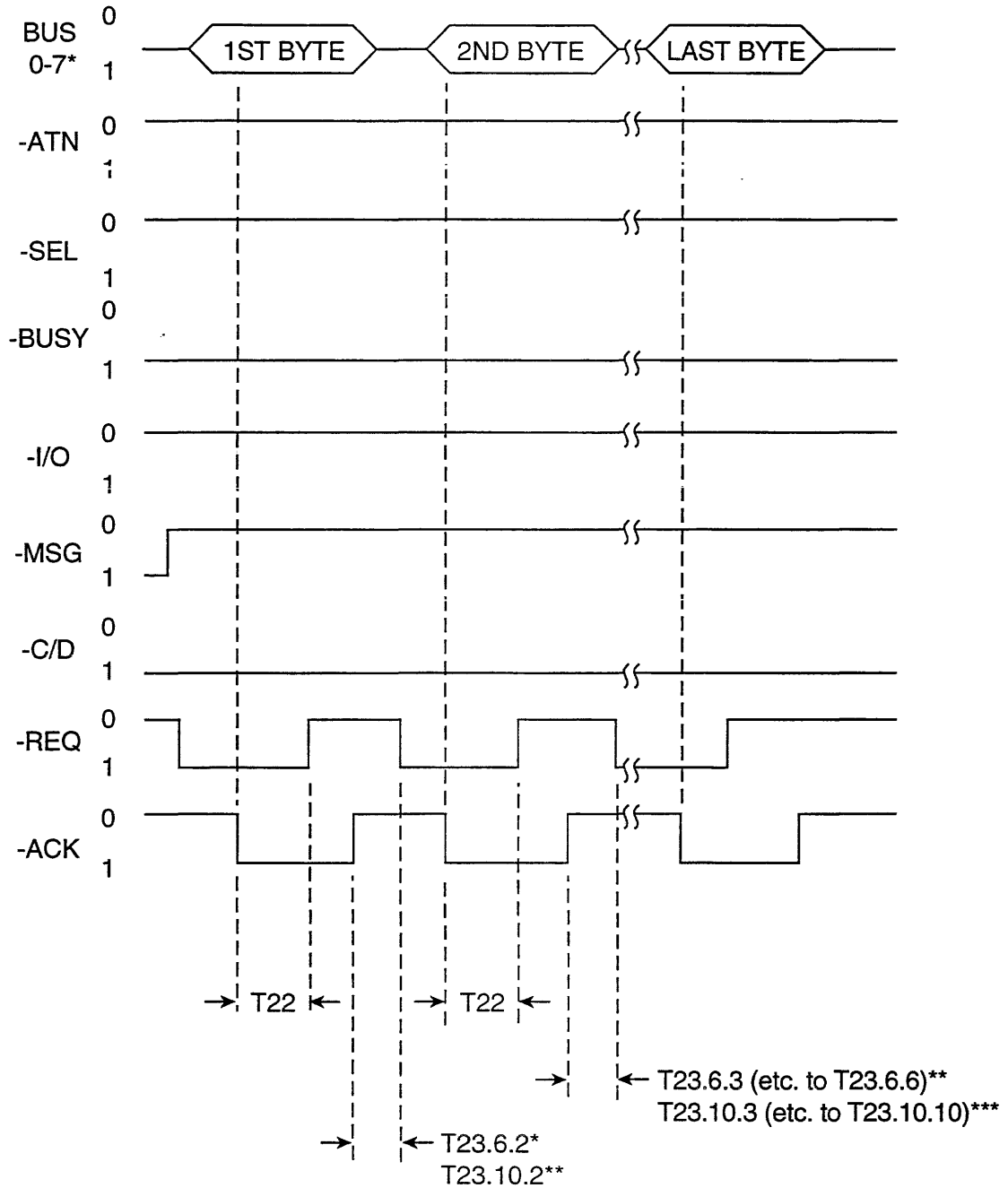


Table 4.5-3. Identify Msg Out to Command Phase



\* and 8-15 if applicable

Table 4.5-4. Command Descriptor Block Transfer



\* and 8-15 if applicable

\*\* six byte commands

\*\*\* ten byte commands

Table 4.5-5. Command Phase, Status Phase, Command Completed Msg and Bus Free

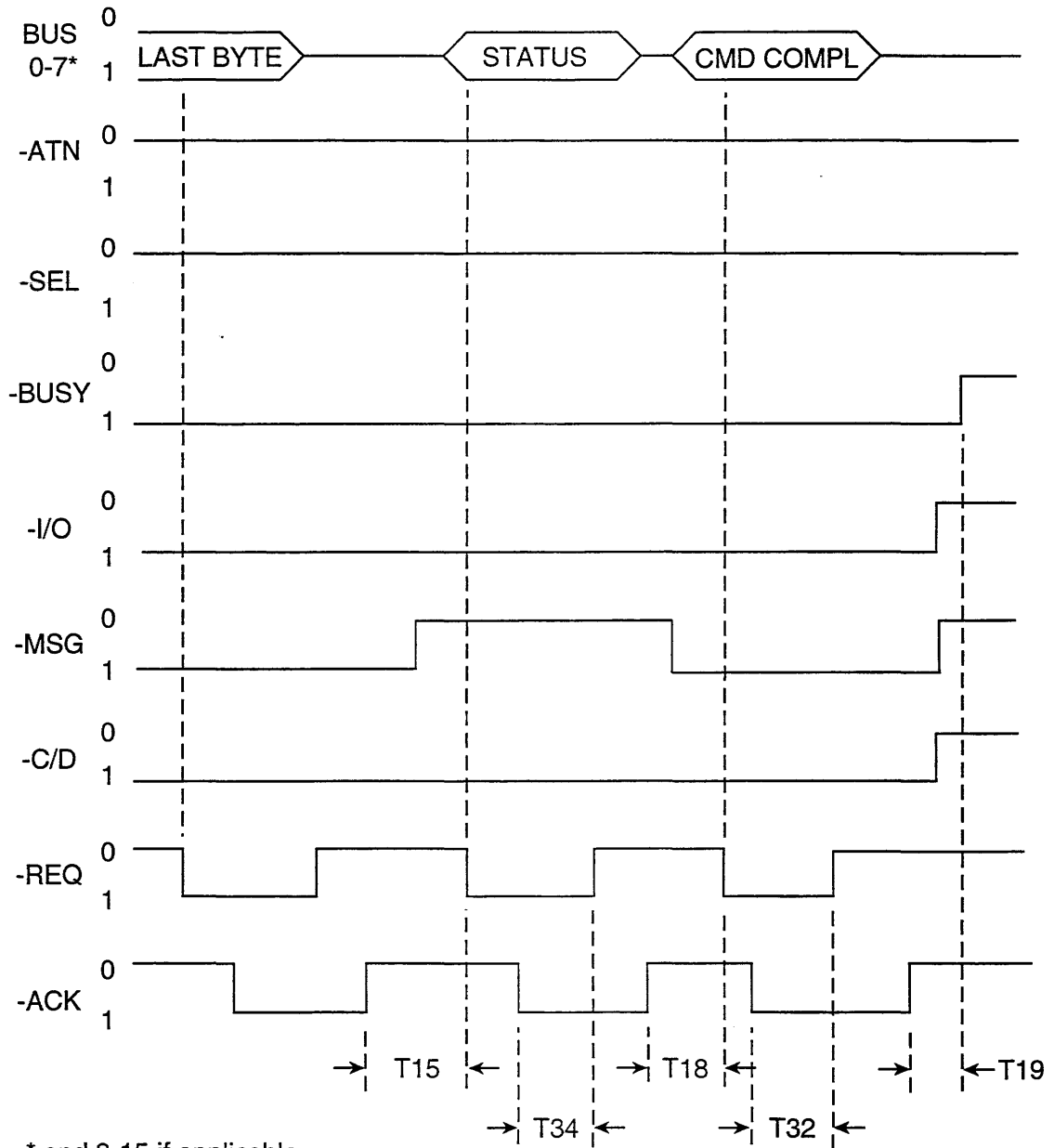
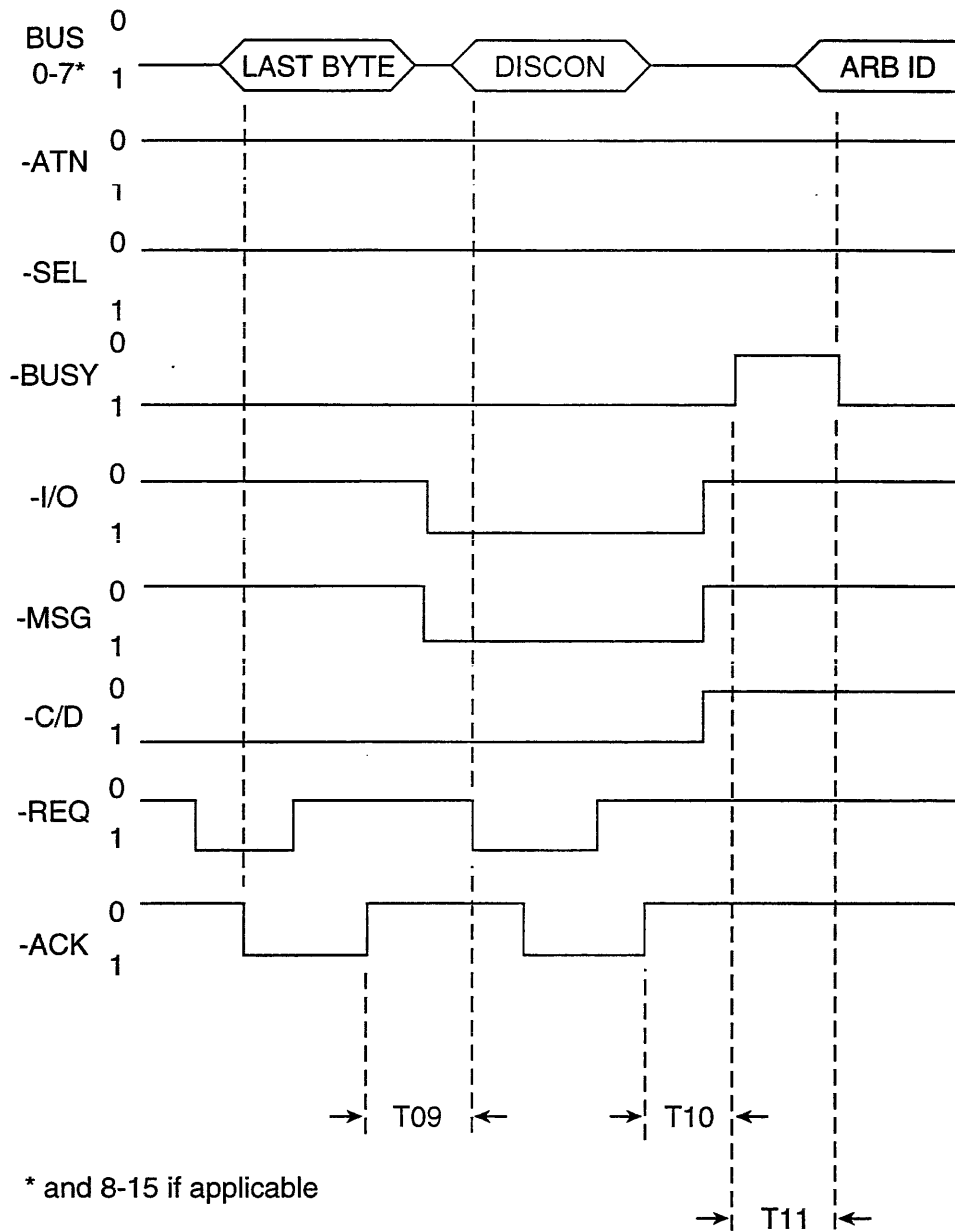
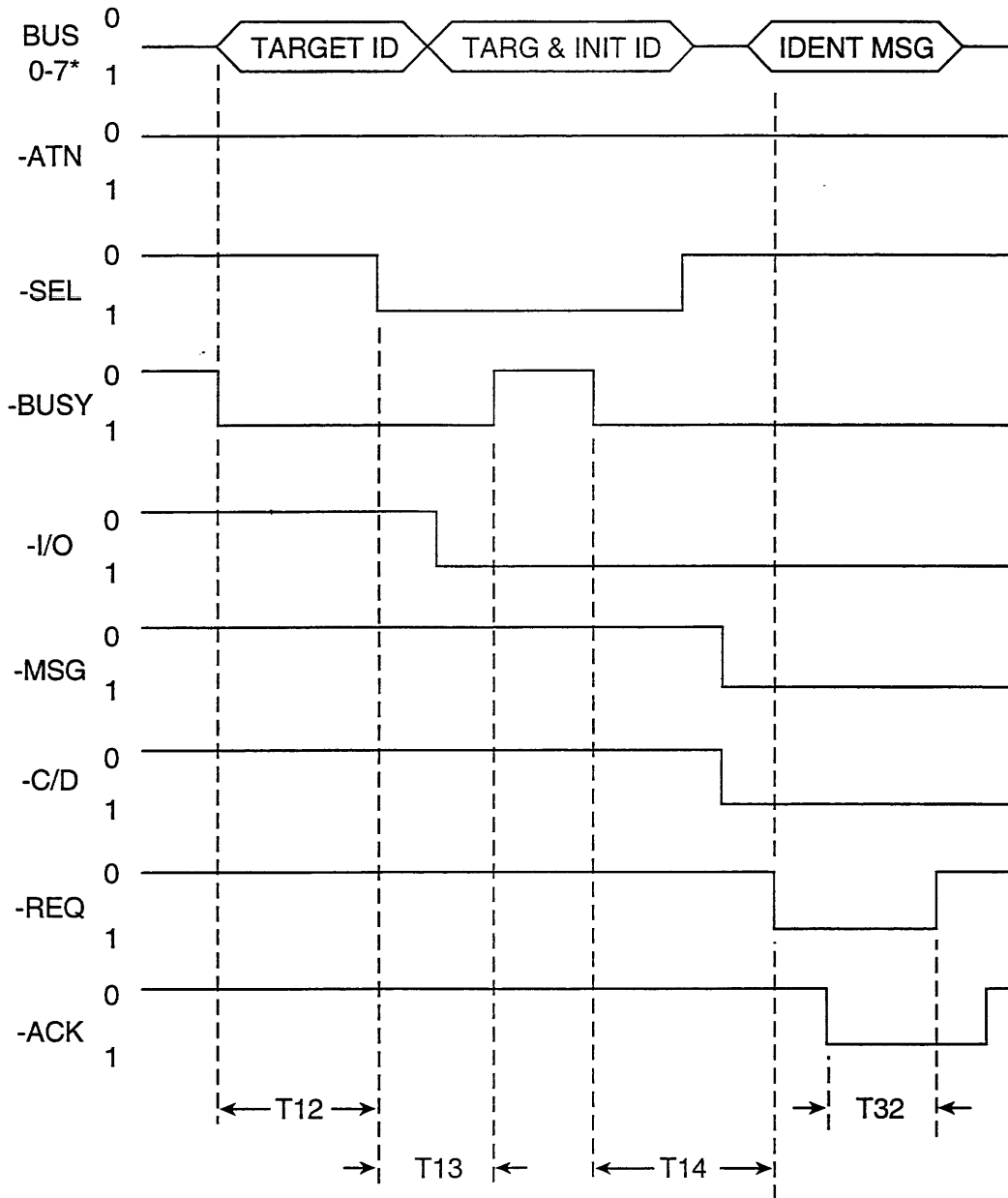


Table 4.5-6. Last Command Byte, Disconnect Msg, Bus Free, and Bus Free, and Reselect



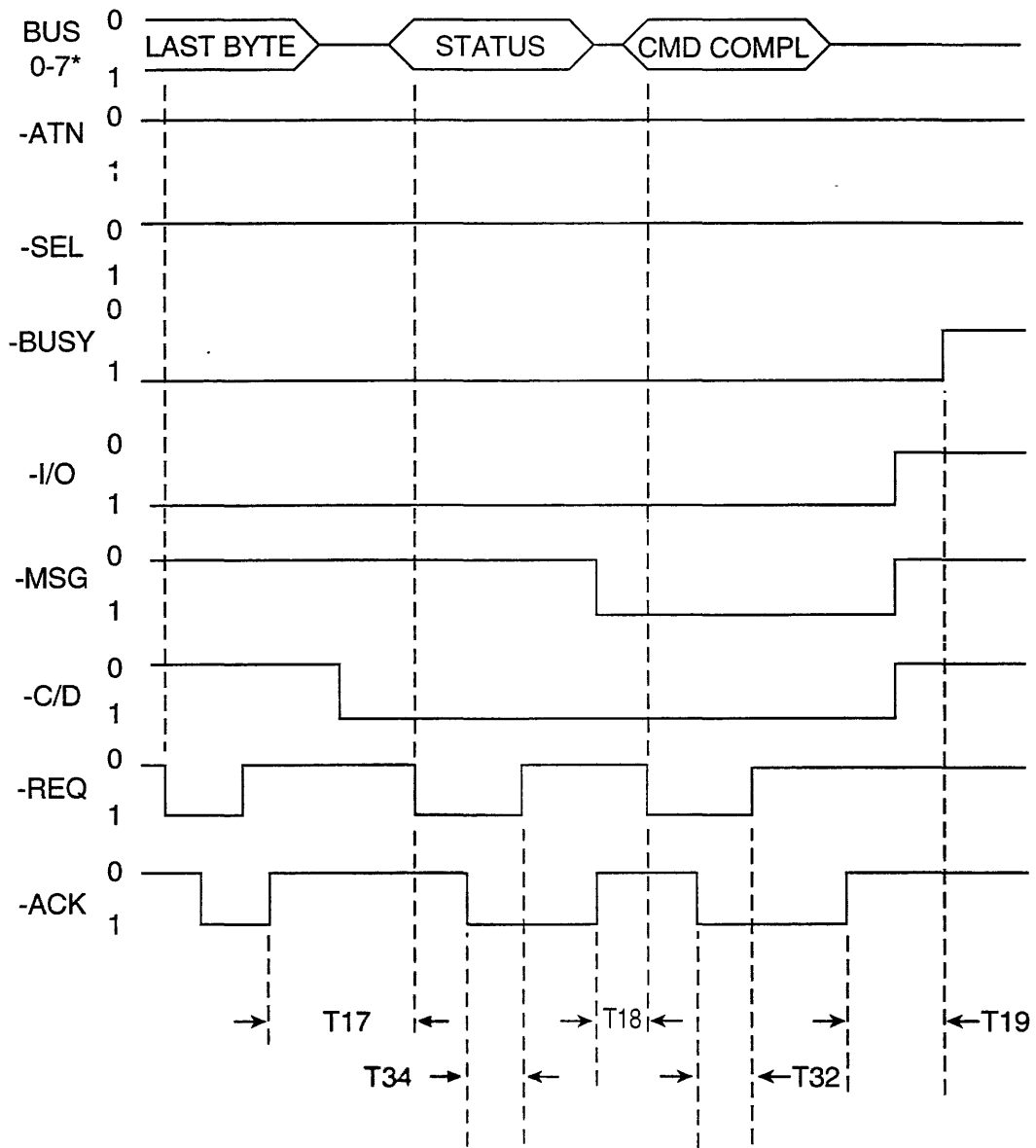
**Note.** To measure T11, there must be no other device contending for the SCSI BUS.

Table 4.5-7. Arbitration, Reselection and Message In



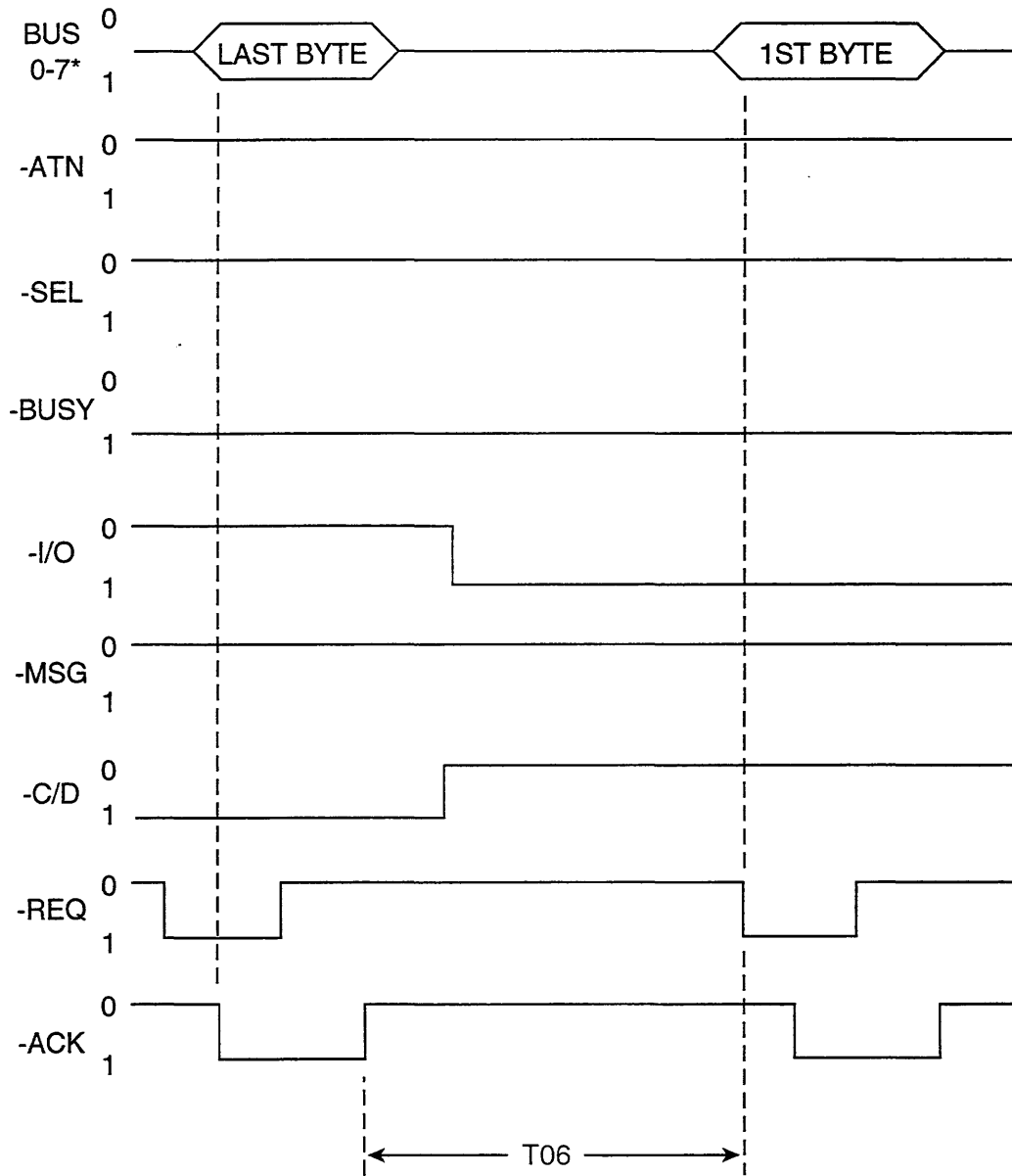
\* and 8-15 if applicable

Table 4.5-8. Reselect Identify Msg, Status Phase, Command Complete Msg and Bus Free



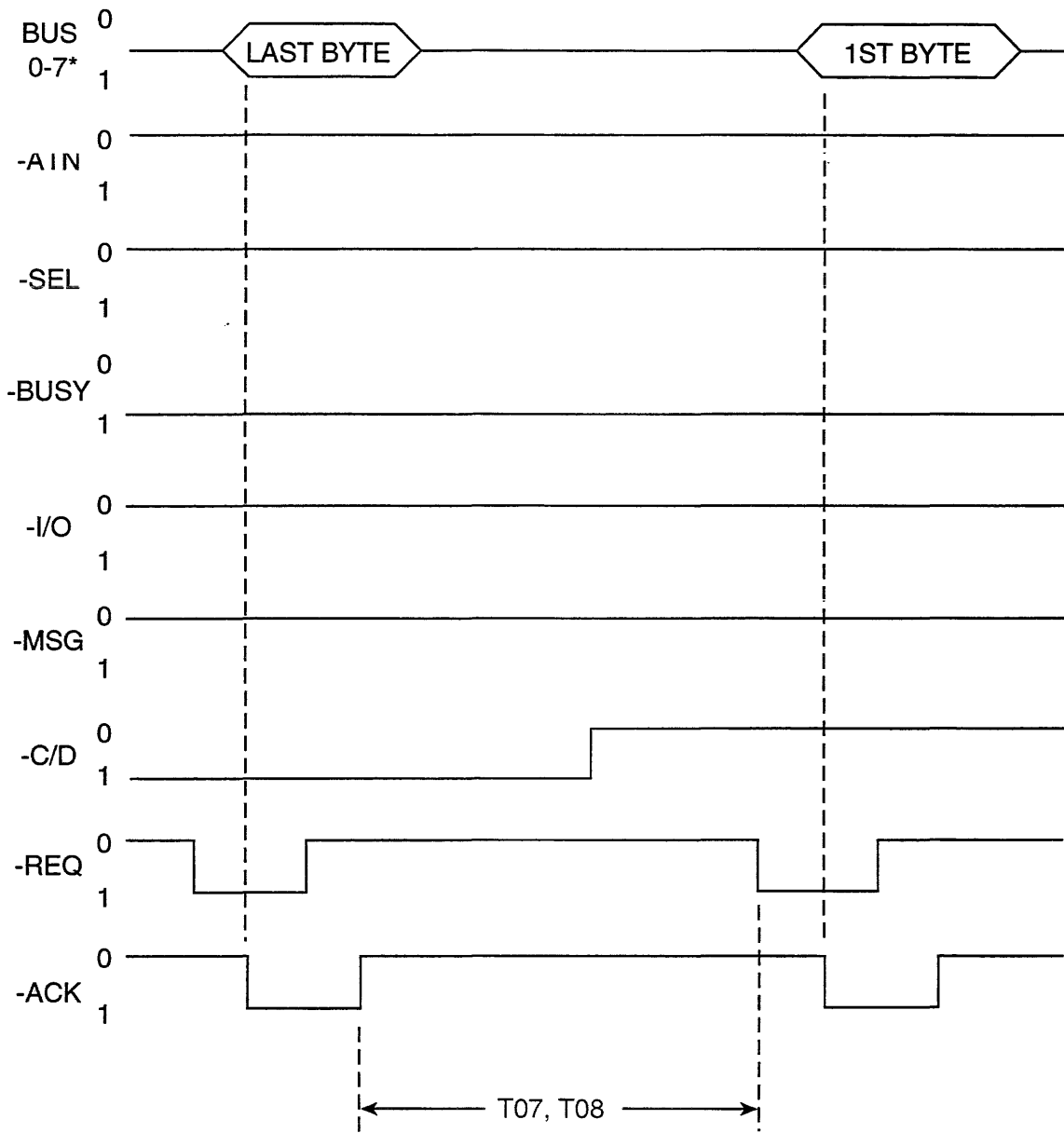
\* and 8-15 if applicable

Table 4.5-9. Last Command Byte to Data in Phase



\* and 8-15 if applicable

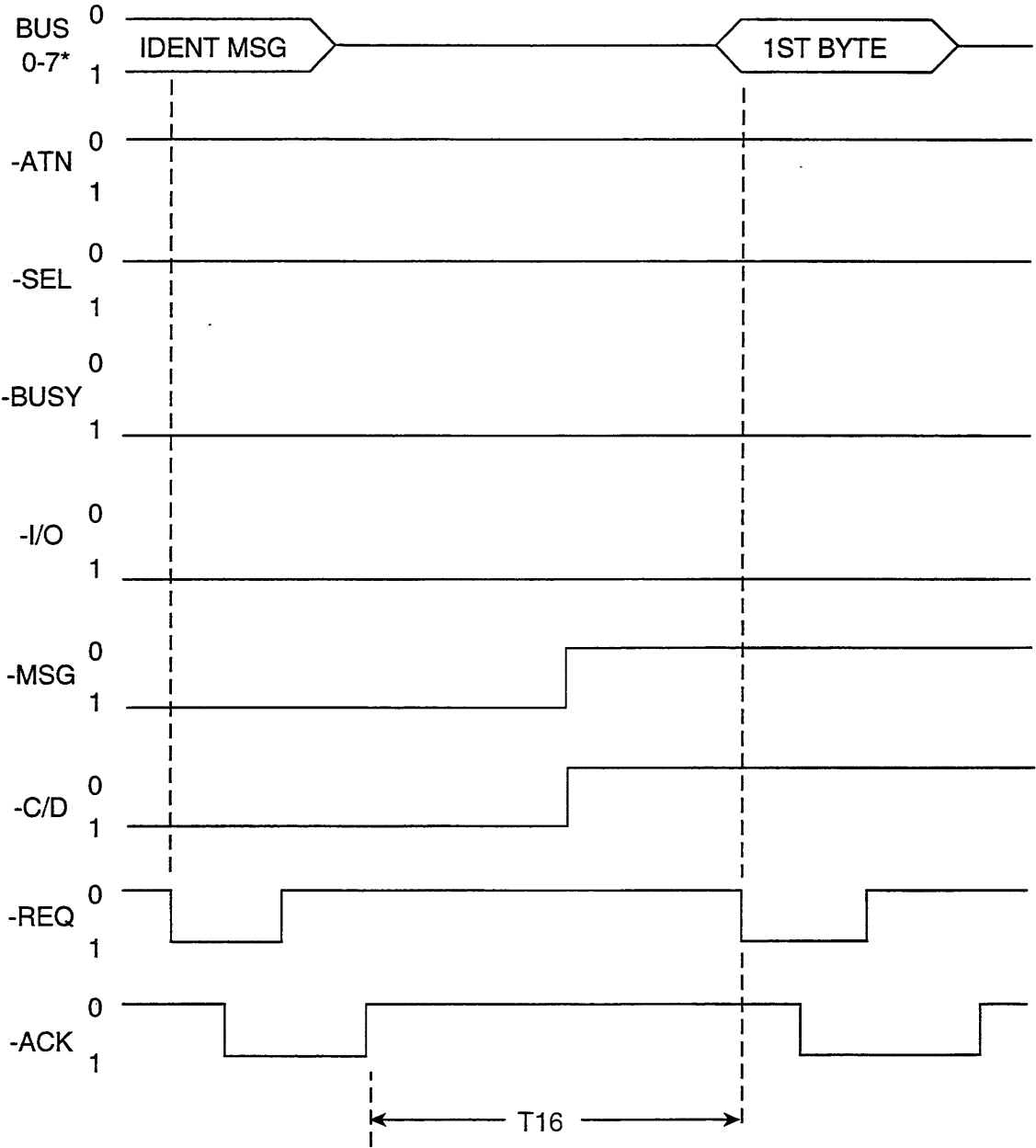
Table 4.5-10. Last Command Byte to Data Out Phase



\* and 8-15 if applicable



Table 4.5-11. Reselect Identify Msg to Data in Phase



\* and 8-15 if applicable

Table 4.5-12. Data in Block Transfer

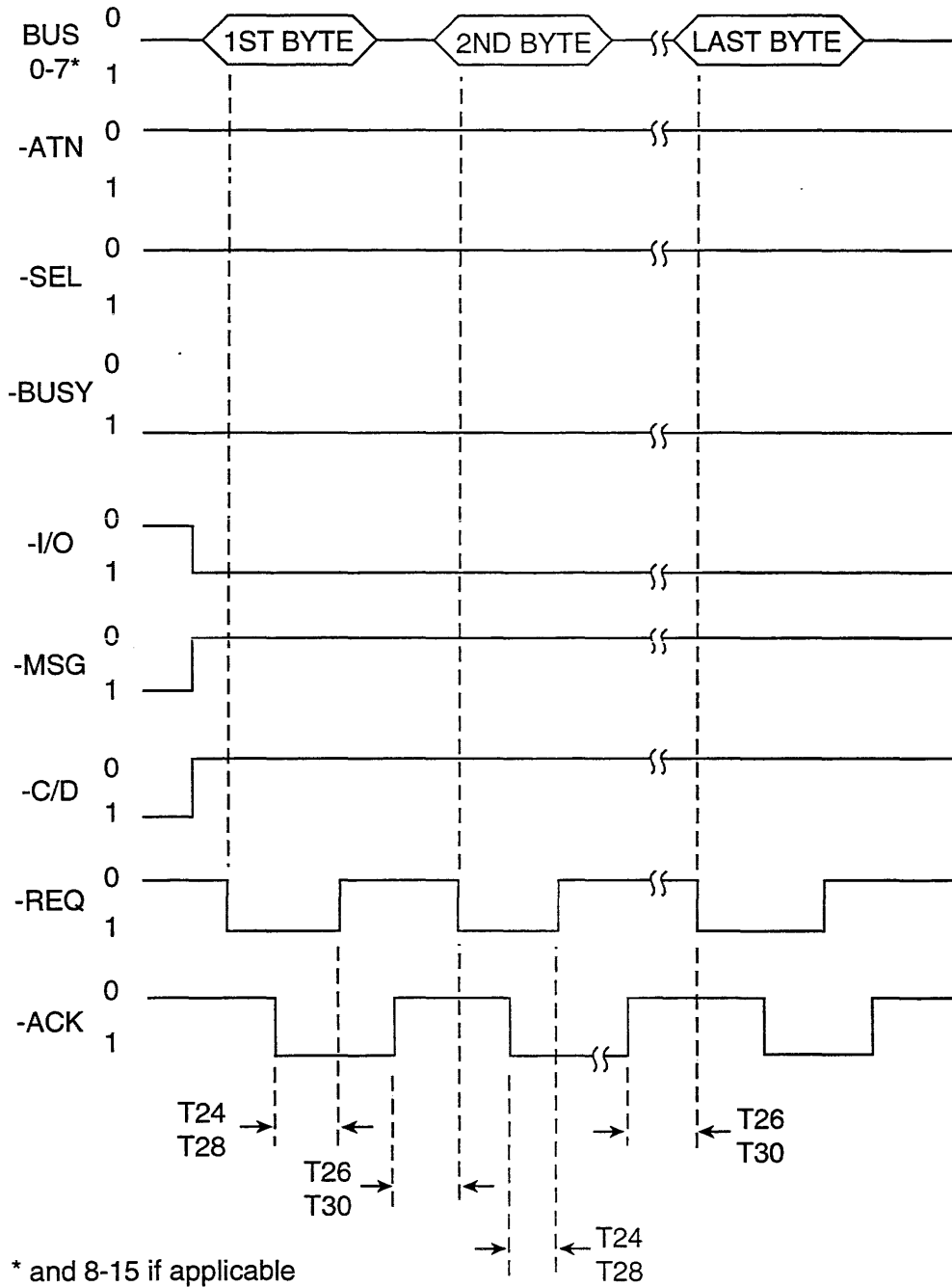
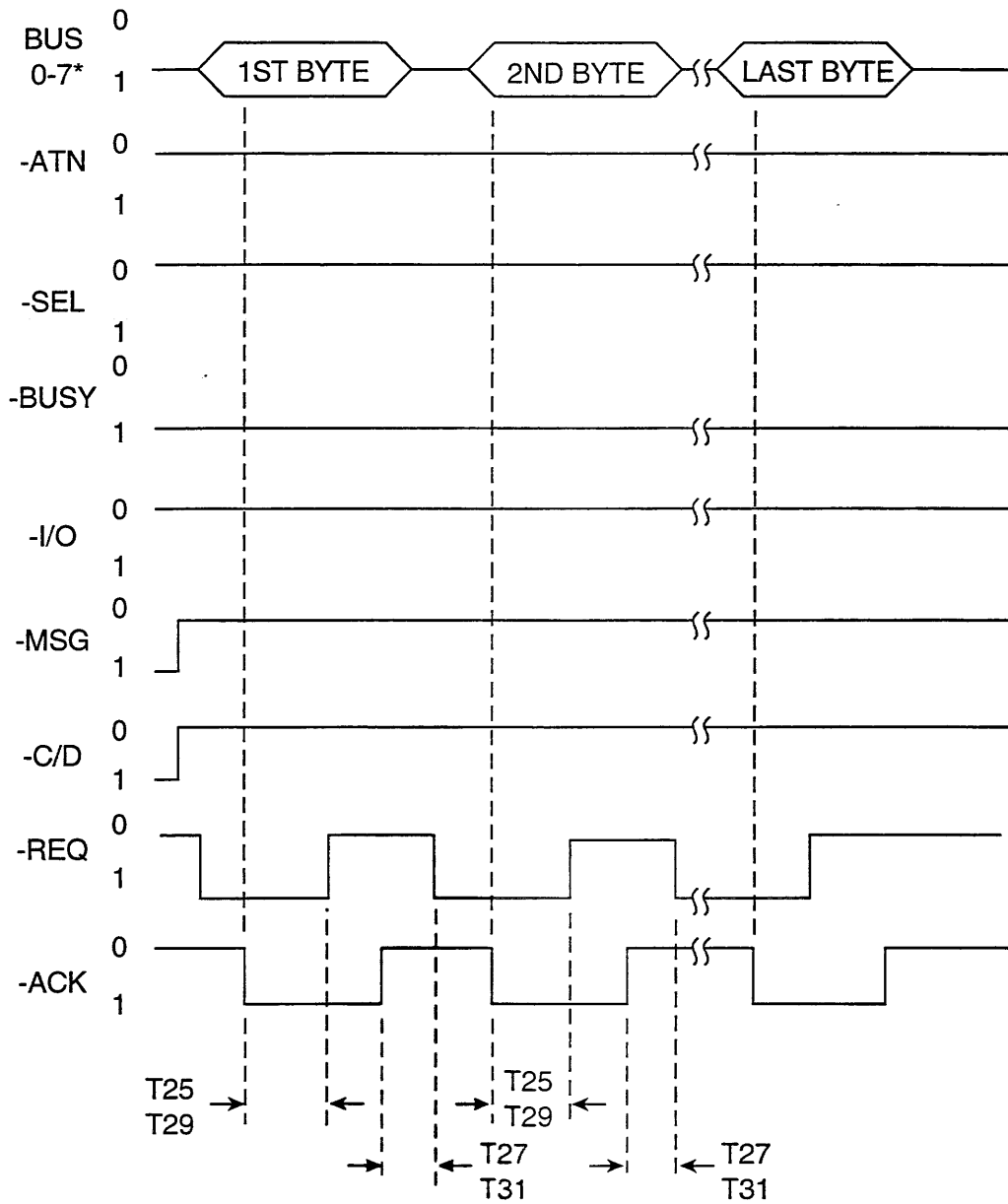
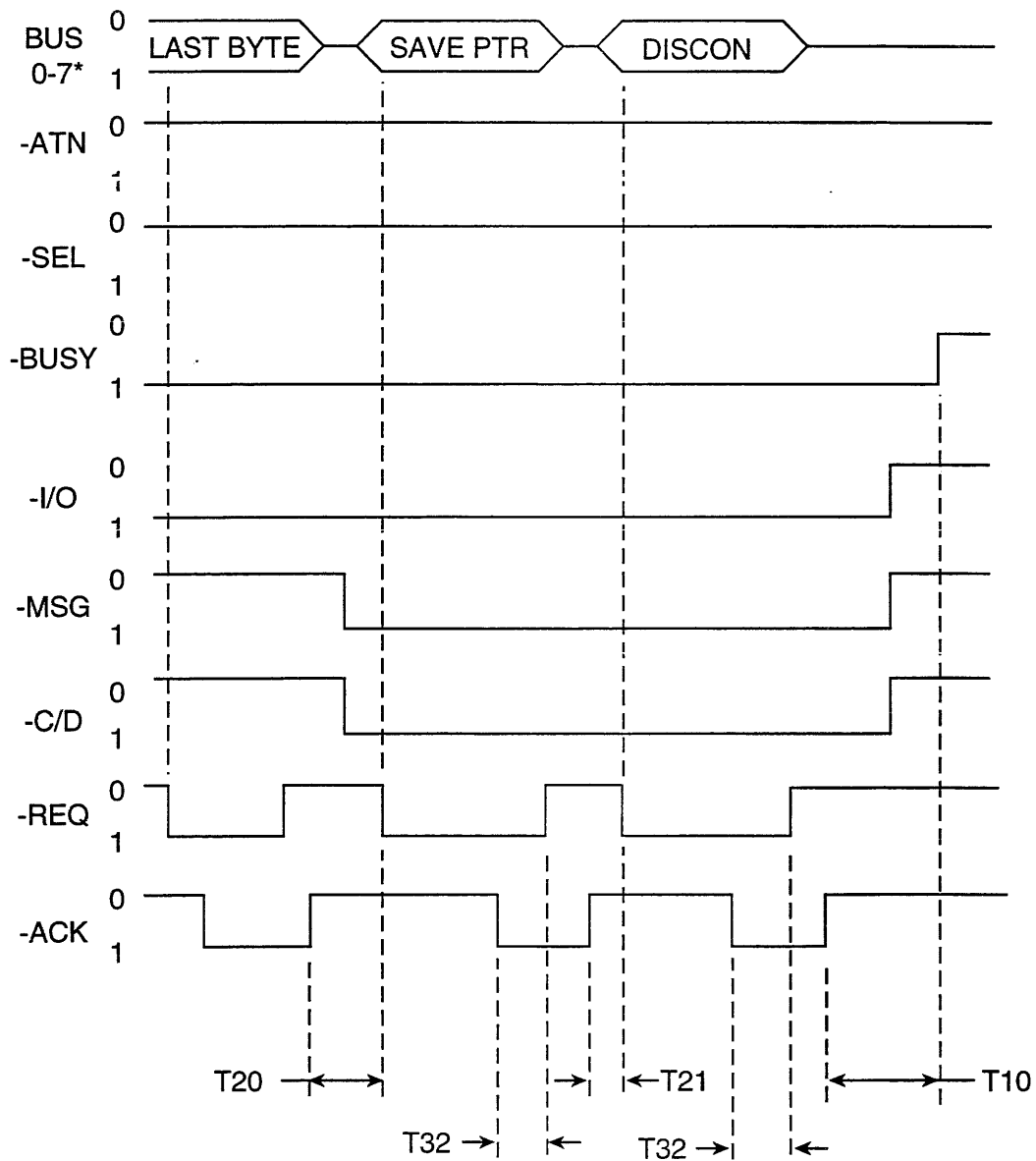


Table 4.5-13. Data Out Block Transfer



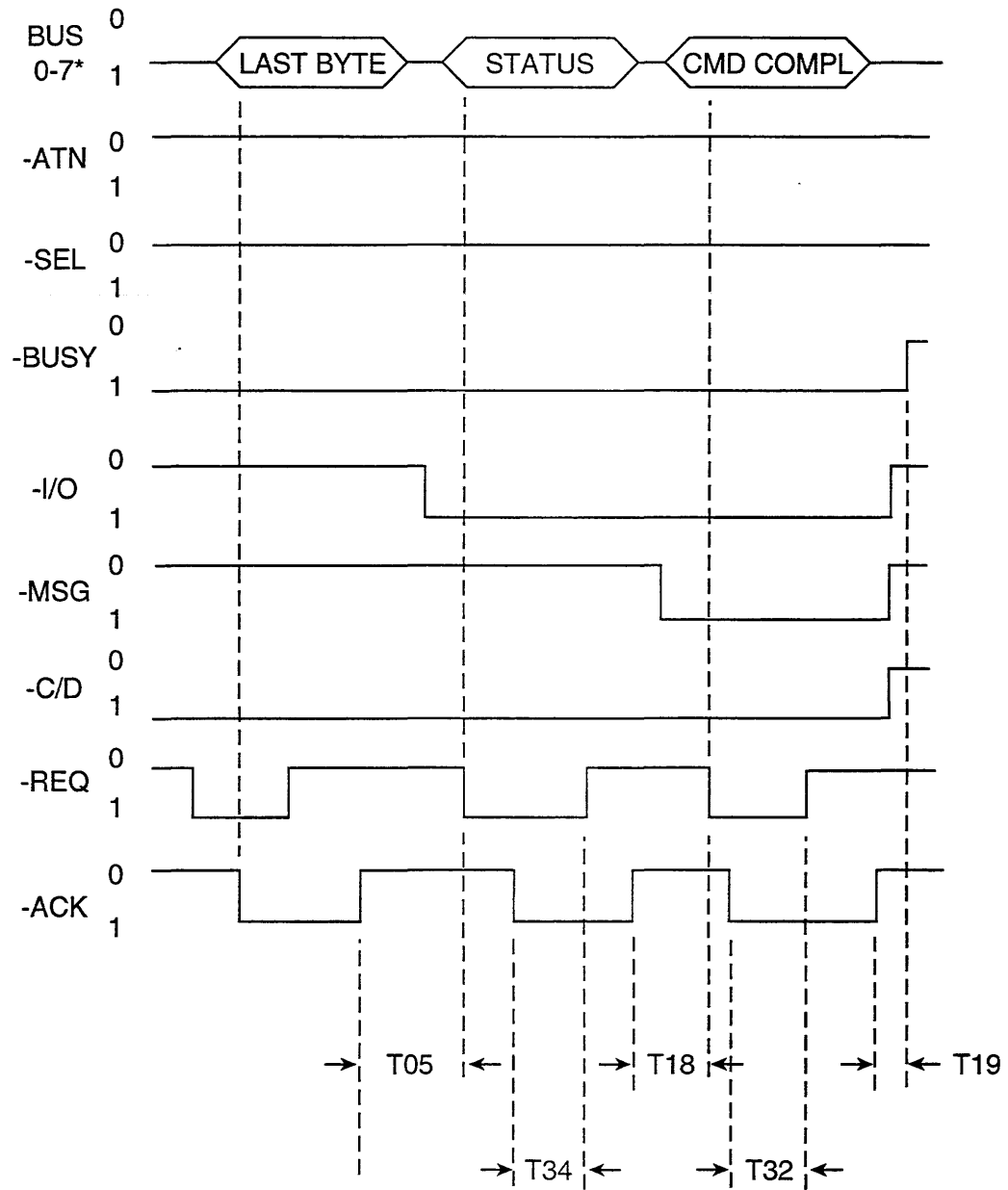
\* and 8-15 if applicable

Table 4.5-14. Last Data Byte, Save Pointer Msg, and Disconnect Msg



\* and 8-15 if applicable

Table 4.5-15. Data in Phase, Status Phase, Command Complete Msg, and Bus Free



\* and 8-15 if applicable

#### 4.6 Unit attention condition

The disc drive sets up the Unit Attention condition when it stores (within itself) a Unit Attention condition flag for each device on the SCSI bus having an initiator relationship with the disc drive, and this Unit Attention condition persists for each initiator until the condition is cleared (flag negated) by each initiator individually. The Unit Attention condition results when one of the following events occur:

1. A power-on sequence occurs.
2. A reset is generated internally by the disc drive (caused by a power glitch).
3. A Bus Device Reset message causes the disc drive to reset itself.
4. The RESET I/O line resets the disc drive.
5. An initiator changes one or more of the Mode Select parameters in the disc drive (these changes could affect one or more of the other initiators).
6. The inquiry data has been changed.
7. The mode parameters in effect for an initiator have been restored from non-volatile memory.
8. An event occurs that requires the attention of the initiator.
9. A Clear Queue message received.
10. The Log parameters are changed. Unit Attention Condition is posted for all initiators in the system other than the one that changed the Log Parameters.

The Unit Attention Parameters page (page 00h, bit 4 of byte 2) of the Mode Select Command controls whether or not a Check Condition Status is to be reported to affected initiators when a Unit Attention condition exists. See Table 5.2.1-31.

The Unit Attention condition for a particular initiator is cleared when that initiator does one of the following:

1. It sends a Request Sense Command.
2. It sends any other legitimate command, with the exception of the Inquiry command. The Inquiry command does not clear the Unit Attention condition.

When a Unit Attention condition flag is stored in the disc drive for an initiator, the commands that initiator issues to the disc drive operate as described in the following paragraphs.

If an initiator sends an Inquiry command to the disc drive when the disc drive has stored a Unit Attention condition flag for that initiator before or after the disc drive reports Check Condition status), the disc drive shall perform the Inquiry command and shall not clear the Unit Attention condition.

If an initiator sends a Request Sense command to the disc drive when a Unit Attention condition flag is stored for that initiator (before or after the disc drive reports Check Condition), the disc drive shall discard any pending sense data, report the Unit Attention Sense Key, and clear the Unit Attention condition (negate the flag) for that initiator.

If an initiator issues a command other than Inquiry or Request Sense while a Unit Attention condition flag is stored for that initiator, the disc drive may or may not perform the command and report Check Condition status, depending on whether or not the Unit Attention bit is zero or one in the Unit Attention Mode Parameters page (Page 00h, bit 4 of byte 2). See Table 5.2.1-31. If a Request Sense is issued next, the Unit Attention condition is reported and cleared (flag negated) as noted in the preceding paragraph. If another command other than Request Sense or Inquiry is issued instead, the disc drive shall perform the command and return the appropriate status. The Unit Attention condition for the subject initiator is cleared (flag negated) and the sense data and flag indicating there has been a Unit Attention condition are lost.

## 4.7 Queued I/O processes

Queuing of I/O processes allows a disc drive to accept multiple commands for execution at a later time.

There are two methods for implementation of queuing, tagged and untagged. Tagged queuing allows the disc drive to accept multiple commands from each initiator. Untagged queuing allows the disc drive to accept one command from each initiator. SCSI-1 mode supports only the untagged queuing implementation. Drives that have SCSI-2 implementation support tagged queuing while in SCSI-2 mode. They can use untagged queuing mode if the initiator does not send queue tag messages.

Initiators may add or delete commands to the queue for the a disc drive within the limitations specified in this specification. When adding a command, the initiator may specify fixed order of execution, allow the disc drive to define the order of execution, or specify that the command is to be executed next. See glossary in Section 2.0 for terminology definitions when reading the following explanations.

### 4.7.1 Untagged queuing

Untagged queuing allows the disc drive to accept a command from an initiator while a command from another initiator is being executed. Only one command for each I T L nexus may be accepted at a time.

A new I/O process may be initiated any time the BUS FREE phase exists even if another I/O process from a different initiator is being executed. If the disconnect privilege is not granted, the disc drive returns BUSY status to the new I/O process.

The I T L nexus specifies the relationship so that the disc drive can always reconnect to the initiator to restore the pointers for I/O process as long as only one command per I T L nexus is issued. It is the responsibility of the initiator to assure that only one command is issued at any time.

### 4.7.2 Tagged queuing

Tagged queuing allows a disc drive to accept multiple commands from the same or different initiators until the disc drive's I/O process queue is full. A new I/O process may be initiated any time the BUS FREE phase exists, if the disconnect privilege is granted. If the disconnect privilege is not granted for a tagged command the disc drive returns BUSY status to the new I/O process.

The queue tag messages (see Table 3.5.3-2) allow the initiator to establish a unique I T L Q nexus to identify each I/O process. Each I/O process may be a command or a set of linked commands with a unique queue tag.

The I T L Q nexus allows the target to reconnect to the desired I/O process and the initiator to restore the correct set of pointers. An initiator may have several I/O processes ongoing to the same or different logical unit as long as each has a unique nexus.

If only SIMPLE QUEUE TAG messages are used, the disc drive may execute the commands in any order that is deemed desirable within the constraints of the queue management algorithm specified in the control mode page (see Table 5.2.1-28). The command ordering is done by the disc drive to meet its performance and functional goals. The algorithm used by the disc drive attempts to achieve certain drive or system performance goals established in the drive firmware for the queued commands and guarantee that all commands will be executed. One possible goal would be to minimize seek times, but there could be others, possibly designed to meet some special system need. Commands from other initiators are also executed in an order selected in the same manner. The disc drive uses the simple Queue Tag when reconnecting to the initiator.

If ORDERED QUEUE TAG messages are used, the disc drive executes the commands in the order received with respect to other commands received with ORDERED QUEUE TAG messages. All commands received with a SIMPLE QUEUE TAG message prior to a command received with an ORDERED QUEUE TAG message, regardless of initiator, are executed before that command with the ORDERED QUEUE TAG message. All commands received with a SIMPLE QUEUE TAG message after a command received with an ORDERED QUEUE TAG message, regardless of initiator, are executed after that command with the ORDERED QUEUE TAG message.

A command received with a HEAD OF QUEUE TAG message is placed first in the queue, to be executed next. A command received with a HEAD OF QUEUE TAG message does not suspend an I/O process for which the disc drive has begun execution. Consecutive commands received with HEAD OF QUEUE TAG messages are executed in a last-in-first-out order.

The control mode page specifies alternative queue management algorithms with additional rules on the order of execution of commands (see 5.2.1-28).

An I/O process received from an initiator without a queue tag message while there are any tagged I/O commands in the command queue from that initiator is an incorrect initiator connection, unless there is a contingent allegiance condition. An I/O process received from an initiator with a queue tag message while there is an untagged command in the command queue from that initiator is also an incorrect initiator connection. In either of these cases the disc drive removes all commands in the queue from that initiator, aborts the command in process if it is from that initiator, and sets the Sense Key to Aborted Command and the Sense Code to Overlapped Commands Attempted.

The RESERVE and RELEASE commands should be sent with an ORDERED QUEUE TAG message. Use of the HEAD OF QUEUE TAG message with these commands could result in reservation conflicts with previously issued commands.

The TEST UNIT READY and INQUIRY commands are often sent with a HEAD OF QUEUE TAG message, since the information returned is either available or has no effect on the condition of the disc drive.

The disc drive recovery option, is to continue execution of commands in the queue after the contingent allegiance condition has cleared. The disc drive returns BUSY status to all other initiators while the contingent allegiance condition exists. During this time all commands in the queue are suspended. All commands used for recovery operations are untagged commands.

Deferred errors are normally related to a command that has already completed. As such, there is no attempt to return the queue tag value assigned to the original command.



#### 4.8 Parameter rounding

Certain parameters sent to a target with various commands contain a range of values. Targets may choose to implement only selected values from this range. When the target receives a value that it does not support, it either rejects the command (CHECK CONDITION status with ILLEGAL REQUEST sense key) or it rounds the value received to a supported value. The target shall reject unsupported values unless rounding is permitted in the description of the parameter.

Rounding of parameter values, when permitted (Rounding is enabled by Mode Select command, page code 00h, byte 2, bit 2) shall be performed as follows:

A target that receives a parameter value that is not an exact supported value shall adjust the value to one that it supports and shall return CHECK CONDITION status with a sense key of RECOVERED ERROR. The additional sense code shall be set to ROUNDED PARAMETER. The initiator is responsible to issue an appropriate command to learn what value the target has selected.

**IMPLEMENTORS NOTE:** Generally, the target should adjust maximum-value fields down to the next lower supported value than the one specified by the initiator. Minimum-value fields should be rounded up to the next higher supported value than the one specified by the initiator. In some cases, the type of rounding (up or down) is explicitly specified in the description of the parameter.



## 5.0 Command descriptions

Two types of commands are supported by the disc drive: commands for all devices; and commands for direct access devices. In each of these categories the disc drive supports only Group 0, Group 1 and Group 2 commands.

### 5.1 Command descriptions for all device types

#### 5.1.1 Group 0 commands for All Device Types

The disc drive implements the following Group 0 commands that applicable for all device types. See Table 5.1.1-1.

Table 5.1.1-1. Group 0 Commands for all device types

Command OP Code*	Command Name	Applicable Section
00h	Test Unit Ready	5.1.1.1
03h	Request Sense	5.1.1.2
12h	Inquiry	5.1.1.3
1Ch	Receive Diag. Results	5.1.1.5
1Dh	Send Diagnostic	5.1.1.6

\*Byte 0 of Command Descriptor Block.

#### 5.1.1.1 Test Unit Ready (00h)

The Test Unit Ready command provides a means to verify the logical unit is ready. This is not a request for a self test. If the logical unit (drive) can accept an appropriate medium access command without returning check condition status, the drive returns a Good status. See Table 5.1.1-2 for proper format.

Table 5.1.1-2. Test Unit Ready Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	Logical Unit No.			0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [2]

**Notes.**

[1] Logical Unit No. must be zero. [2] See "Control Bytes", paragraph 4.2.6.

If the drive cannot become operational or is in a state such that an initiator action (e.g., START command) is required to make the unit ready, the drive returns CHECK CONDITION status with a Sense Key of NOT READY. One of several possible Additional Sense codes indicates the reason for the NOT READY condition.

## 5.1.1.2 Request Sense Command (03h)

Table 5.1.1-3. Request Sense command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
1	Logical Unit No			0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	Allocation Length in Bytes							
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [1]

The Request Sense command (TABLE 5.1.1-3) requests that the disc drive transfer sense data to the initiator in the format shown in Table 5.1.1-4. The sense data shall be valid for a Check Condition status returned on the prior command. This sense data shall be preserved by the disc drive for the initiator until retrieval is requested by the initiator when it sends the Request Sense command or until the receipt of any other command for the same drive from the initiator that issued the command that resulted in the Check Condition status. Sense data shall be cleared upon receipt of any subsequent command to the drive from the initiator receiving the Check Condition status.

If a disc drive sends a Check Condition status as a response to a Request Sense command being in error, it shall do so only if the error was a fatal error. For example:

1. The disc drive receives a nonzero reserved bit in the command descriptor block.
2. An unrecovered parity error occurs on the Data Bus.
3. A disc drive malfunction prevents return of sense data.

**Notes.** [1] See "Control Bytes", paragraph 4.2.6.

If any nonfatal error occurs during execution of Request Sense, the disc drive shall return sense data with Good status. Following a fatal error on a Request Sense command, sense data may be invalid.

The Allocation Length in byte four of the format shown specifies the number of bytes the initiator has allocated for returned sense data. The Allocation Length should always be at least 18 bytes for disc drive devices for the initiator to receive all of the disc drive sense data. Any other value indicates the maximum number of bytes that shall be transferred. The disc drive shall terminate the Data In phase when allocation length bytes have been transferred or when all available sense data have been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less. The disc drive always returns sense data in the Extended Sense Data Format.

**Extended Sense Data Format**

The drive is capable of sending 18 bytes of extended sense data, and does send 18 bytes if the Allocation Length of the Request Sense Command is equal to or greater than 18 bytes (otherwise, the number of bytes specified by the Allocation Length are sent). The Extended Sense Data Format is summarized in Table 5.1.1-4. Numbers in parentheses in the sense data are references to notes following the table. A “1” or a “0” means the data bit is always logic 1 or logic 0, respectively, when sent by a disc drive.

**Table 5.1.1-4. Disc drive Extended Sense Data Summary**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Validity Bit [1]	1 1	1 1	1 1	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 OR 1 [2] Error Code
1	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Segment Number [3]							
2	0 Filemark [4]	0 EOM [5]	0 ILI [6]	0	Sense Key			[7]
3	Information Byte (MSB) [8]							
4	:							
5	:							
6	Information Byte (LSB) [8]							
7	Additional Sense Length - Decimal 10 (Max) [9]							
8	Bytes 8 - 11 are for Command Specific Data.							
9								
10								
11								
12	Additional Sense Code [10]							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier [10]							
14	FRU Code [11]							
15	SKSV [12]	Sense Key Specific						[13]
16								
17								
18—n	Product Unique Sense Data [14]							

[ ] For notes see next page.

*continued from previous page*

**Notes:**

- [1] Validity Bit - "1" if the Information Bytes (Bytes 3-6) are valid, "0" if not valid.
- [2] Error Code 70h means current error. Code 71h means a deferred error. See paragraph 5.1.1.2.1 for a description of these two error conditions.
- [3] Segment Number - Always Zeros
- [4] Filemark - Always "0" for disc drive.
- [5] EOM - End of medium indicator. Always "0" for disc drive.
- [6] ILI - Incorrect Length Indicator. The requested (previous command) block of data did not match the logical block length of the data on the medium.
- [7] Sense Key - Indicates the general error category. These are listed in Table 5.1.1-5. the code given in byte 12 provides additional clarification of errors. See also note [10] below for related information.
- [8] If the validity bit is a 1, the Information Bytes contain the unsigned Logical BlockAddress associated with the Sense Key. Unless otherwise specified, the Information Bytes contain the address of the current logical block. For example, if the Sense Key is Medium Error, it is the Logical BlockAddress of the failure block.
- [9] Additional Length - Specifies additional sense bytes are to follow. This is limited to a maximum of 10 (decimal) additional bytes. If the Allocation length of the Command Descriptor Block is too small to transfer all of the additional sense bytes, the additional sense length is not adjusted to reflect the truncation.
- [10] Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier - Provides additional clarification of errors whenever Sense Key is valid. Error code definitions are in Table 5.1.1-6. If the condition is not reportable by the disc drive, the additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier are set to "No Additional Sense Information (Code 0000)".
- [11] FRU (Field Replaceable Unit) Code - Defined for Field Maintenance personnel only.
- [12] [13]

The SKSV bits and sense-key specific bytes are described below.

The additional sense bytes field may contain command specific data, peripheral device specific data, or vendor-specific data that further defines the nature of the CHECK CONDITION status.

The sense-key specific field is defined by this specification when the value of the sense-key specific valid (SKSV) bit is one. The definition of this field is determined by the value of the sense key field. This field is reserved for sense keys not described in Table 5.1.1-5.

If the sense key field is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST (5H) and the SKSV bit is set to one, the sense-key specific field is defined as shown in Table 5.1.1-4a. These fields point to illegal parameters in command descriptor blocks and data parameters sent by the initiator in the DATA OUT phase.

continued from previous page

Notes [12] [13]: (continued)

Table 5.1.1-4a. Field Pointer Bytes

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
15	SKSV	C/D	Rsvd.	Rsvd	BPV	Bit Pointer		
16	(MSB)	Field Pointer						
17								(LSB)

A command data (C/D) bit of one indicates that the illegal parameter is in the command descriptor block. A C/D bit of zero indicates that the illegal parameter is in the data parameters sent by the initiator during the DATA OUT phase.

A bit pointer valid (BPV) bit of zero indicates that the value in the bit pointer field is not valid. A BPV bit of one indicates that the bit pointer field specifies the bit of the byte designated by the field pointer that is in error. When a multiple-bit field is in error, the bit pointer field shall point to the most-significant (left-most) bit of the field.

The field pointer field indicates the byte of the command descriptor block or of the parameter data that was in error. Bytes are numbered starting from zero, as shown in the tables describing the commands and parameters. When a multiple-byte field is in error, the pointer shall point to the most-significant (left-most) byte of the field.

**Note.** Bytes identified as being in error are not necessarily the place that has to be changed to correct the problem.

If the sense key is RECOVERED ERROR (1h), HARDWARE ERROR (4h) or MEDIUM ERROR (3h) and if the SKSV bit is one, the sense-key specific field is defined as shown in Table 5.1.1-4b. These fields identify the actual number of retries used in attempting to recover from the error condition.

Table 5.1.1-4b. Actual Retry Count Bytes

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
15	SKSV	Reserved						
16	(MSB)	Actual Retry Count						
17								(LSB)

The actual retry count field returns implementation specific information on the actual number of retries used in attempting to recover an error or exception condition.

Not all drives implement reporting actual retry count in bytes 15, 16 and 17. See specific drive Product Manual Vol. 1.

**Note.** This field relates to the retry count fields specified within the error recovery parameters page of the MODE SELECT command. See Table 5.2.1-26 and paragraph 6.0.

*continued from previous page*

Notes [12] [13]: (continued)

If the sense key is NOT READY and the SKSV bit is one, the sense-key specific field shall be defined as shown in Table 5.1.1-4c. These fields are only defined for the FORMAT UNIT command with the Immed bit set to one.

**Table 5.1.1-5c. Format Progress Indication Bytes**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
15	SKSV		Reserved					
16	MSB		Progress Indication					
17							LSB	

The progress indication field is a percent complete indication in which the returned value is the numerator that has 65536 (10000h) as its denominator. The progress indication shall be based upon the total format operation including any certification or initialization operations.

Support or non-support for format progress indication is given in section 11.4 of each drive Product Manual (Volume 1).

Note [14]: Bytes 18-n not presently used.

Table 5.1.1-5 lists the Sense Keys in the extended sense data format that are used by the disc drive.

Table 5.1.1-6 lists the Extended Sense Additional Sense and Additional Sense Qualifier Codes that are used by the disc drive.



Table 5.1.1-5. Applicable disc drive Sense Keys

Sense Key	Description
0h	No Sense - Indicates there is no specific Sense Key information to be reported for the disc drive. This would be the case for a successful command or when the ILI bit is one.
1h	Recovered Error - Indicates the last command completed successfully with some recovery action performed by the disc drive. When multiple recovered errors occur, the last error that occurred is reported by the additional sense bytes. NOTE: For some Mode settings, the last command may have terminated before completing.
2h	Not Ready - Indicates the logical unit addressed cannot be accessed. Operator intervention may be required to correct this condition.
3h	Medium Error - Indicates the command terminated with a nonrecovered error condition, probably caused by a flaw in the medium or an error in the recorded data.
4h	Hardware Error - Indicates the disc drive detected a nonrecoverable hardware failure while performing the command or during a self test. This includes SCSI interface parity error, controller failure, device failure, etc.
5h	Illegal Request - Indicates an illegal parameter in the command descriptor block or in the additional parameters supplied as data for some commands (Format Unit, Mode Select, etc). If the disc drive detects an invalid parameter in the Command Descriptor Block, it shall terminate the command without altering the medium. If the disc drive detects an invalid parameter in the additional parameters supplied as data, the disc drive may have already altered the medium. This sense key may also indicate that an invalid IDENTIFY message was received.
6h	Unit Attention - Indicates the disc drive may have been reset. See Paragraph 4.6 for more detailed information about the Unit Attention Condition.
7h	Data Protect - Indicates that a command that reads or writes the medium was attempted on a block that is protected from this operation. The read or write operation is not performed.
9h	Firmware Error - Vendor specific sense key.
Bh	Aborted Command - Indicates the disc drive aborted the command. The initiator may be able to recover by trying the command again.
Ch	Equal - Indicates a SEARCH DATA command has satisfied an equal comparison.
Dh	Volume Overflow - Indicates a buffered peripheral device has reached the end of medium partition and data remains in the buffer that has not been written to the medium.
Eh	Miscompare - Indicates that the source data did not match the data read from the medium.

Table 5.1.1-6. Error codes for bytes 12 and 13 of Sense Data (values are in hexadecimal)

Byte 12	Byte 13	Description
00	00	No Additional Sense Information
01	00	No Index/Sector Signal
02	00	No Seek Complete
03	00	Peripheral Device Write Fault
04	00	Logical Unit Not Ready, Cause Not Reportable
04	01	Logical Unit Not Ready, Becoming Ready
04	02	Logical Unit Not Ready, Initializing Command Required
04	03	Logical Unit Not Ready, Manual Intervention Required
04	04	Logical Unit Not Ready, Format in Progress
08	00	Logical Unit Communication Failure
08	01	Logical Unit Communication Time-Out
08	02	Logical Unit Communication Parity Error
09	00	Track Following Error
0C	01	Write Error Recovered With Auto-Reallocation
10	00	ID CRC Or ECC Error
11	00	Unrecovered Read Error
11	01	Read Retries Exhausted
11	02	Error Too Long To Correct
12	00	Address Mark Not Found For ID Field
14	00	Sector Not Found
14	01	Record Not Found
15	01	Mechanical Positioning Error
15	02	Positioning Error Detected By Read Of Medium
16	00	Data Synchronization Mark error
17	00	Recovered Data With No Error Correction Applied
17	01	Recovered Data Using Retries
17	02	Recovered Data Using Positive Offset
17	03	Recovered Data Using Negative Offset
17	06	Recovered Data Without ECC - Data Auto Reallocated
18	00	Recovered Data With ECC
18	01	Recovered Data With ECC And Retries Applied
18	02	Recovered Data With ECC And/Or Retries, Data Auto-Reallocated
19	00	Defect List Error
19	01	Defect List Not Available
19	02	Defect List Error In Primary List
1A	00	Parameter List Length Error
1C	00	Defect List Not Found
1C	01	Primary Defect List Not Found
1D	00	Miscompare During Verify Operation

*continued from previous page*

Byte 12	Byte 13	Description
20	00	Invalid Command Operation Code
21	00	Logical Block Address Out Of Range
24	00	Invalid Field In CDB
25	00	Logical Unit Not Supported
26	00	Invalid Field In Parameter List
26	01	Parameter Not Supported
26	02	Parameter Value Invalid
26	03	Invalid Field Parameter - Threshold Parameter
26	98	Invalid Field Parameter - Check Sum
26	99	Invalid Field Parameter - Firmware Tag
27	00	Write Protected
29	00	Power On, Reset, Or Bus Device Reset Occurred
2A	00	Parameters Changed
2A	01	Mode Parameters Changed
2A	02	Log Parameters Changed
2F	00	Tagged Commands Cleared By Another Initiator
31	01	Format Failed
32	00	No Defect Spare Location Available
37	00	Parameter Rounded
3F	01	Microcode Changed
3F	02	Changed Operating Definition
40	01	DRAM Parity Error
42	00	Power-On or Self-Test Failure
43	00	Message Error
44	00	Internal Target Failure
47	00	SCSI Parity Error
48	00	Initiator Detected Error Message Received
49	00	Invalid Message Error
4E	00	Overlapped Commands Attempted
5B*	00	Log Exception
5B*	01	Threshold Condition Met
5B*	02	Log Counter At Maximum
5B*	03	Log List Codes EXHAUSTED
5C	00	RPL Status Change
80	00	General Firmware Error Qualifier

**\*Note.** Can be supported, but is a factory installed option.

### 5.1.1.2.1 Deferred errors

Error code 70h (current error) indicates that the CHECK CONDITION or COMMAND TERMINATED status returned is the result of an error or exception condition on the command that returned the CHECK CONDITION or COMMAND TERMINATED status or an unexpected bus free condition. This includes errors generated during execution of the command by the actual execution process. It also includes errors not related to any command that are first observed during execution of a command. Examples of this latter type of error include disc servo-mechanism off-track errors and power-up test errors.

Error code 71h (deferred error) indicates that the CHECK CONDITION status returned is the result of an error or exception condition that occurred during execution of a previous command for which GOOD status has already been returned. Such commands are associated with use of the immediate bit (start unit), with some forms of caching, and with multiple command buffering. Targets that implement these features are required to implement deferred error reporting.

When the disc drive does not use the AEN (Asynchronous Event Notification) Feature, the deferred error may be indicated by returning CHECK CONDITION status to the appropriate initiator as described below. The subsequent execution of a REQUEST SENSE command shall return the deferred error sense information.

If CHECK CONDITION status for a deferred error is returned, the current command has not performed any storage operations or output operations to the media. After the target detects a deferred error condition on a logical unit, it shall return a deferred error according to the rules described below:

(1) If a deferred error can be recovered with no external system intervention, a deferred error indication shall not be posted unless required by the error handling parameters of the MODE SELECT command. The occurrence of the error may be logged if statistical or error logging is supported.

(2) If a deferred error can be associated with a causing initiator and with a particular function or a particular subset of data, and the error is either unrecovered or required to be reported by the mode parameters, a deferred error indication shall be returned to the causing initiator. If an initiator other than the causing initiator attempts access to the particular function or subset of data associated with the deferred error, a BUSY status shall be returned to that initiator in response to the command attempting the access.

**Note.** Not all devices may be sufficiently sophisticated to identify the function or data that has failed. Those that cannot should treat the error in the following manner.

(3) If a deferred error cannot be associated with a causing initiator or with a particular subset of data, a deferred error indication shall be returned on behalf of the failing logical unit to each initiator. If multiple deferred errors have accumulated for some initiators, only the last error shall be returned.

(4) If a current command has not yet started executing, and a deferred error occurs, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and deferred error information posted in the sense data. By convention, the current command is considered to have started execution if the target has changed phase from the COMMAND phase to the next normal phase of the command sequence. If a deferred error occurs while a current command is executing and the current command has been affected by the error, the command shall be terminated by CHECK CONDITION status and current error information shall be returned in the sense data. In this case, if the current error information does not adequately define the deferred error condition, a deferred error may be returned after the current error information has been recovered. If a deferred error occurs while a current command is executing and the current command completes successfully, the target may choose to return the deferred error information after the completion of the current command.

Deferred errors may indicate that an operation was unsuccessful long after the command performing the data transfer returned GOOD status. If data that cannot be replicated or recovered from other sources is being stored using such buffered write operations, synchronization commands should be performed before the critical data is destroyed in the host initiator. This is necessary to be sure that recovery actions can be taken if deferred errors do occur in the storing of the data. When AEN is not implemented, the synchronizing process provides the necessary commands to allow returning CHECK CONDITION status and subsequent returning of deferred error sense information after all buffered operations are guaranteed to be complete.

**5.1.1.3 Inquiry Command (12h)**

The INQUIRY command requests that information regarding parameters of the disc drive be sent to the initiator. An option Enable Vital Product Data (EVPD) allows the initiator to request additional information about the disc drive. See paragraph 5.1.1.3.1. Several Inquiry commands may be sent to request the vital product data pages instead of the standard data shown in Table 5.1.1-8.

**Table 5.1.1-7. Inquiry command (12h)**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			0	0	0	0	EVPD [2]
2	Page Code							[3]
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	Allocation Length In Bytes							[4]
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [5]

**Notes.**

- [1] LUN must be zero.
- [2] An enable vital product data (EVPD) bit of one specifies that the disc drive shall return the vital product data specified by the page code field. An EVPD bit of zero specifies that the disc drive shall return the standard INQUIRY data.
- [3] The page code field specifies the page of vital product data information that the disc drive shall return. If the EVPD bit is zero and the page code field is not zero the disc drive shall return CHECK CONDITION status with the sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and an additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
- [4] The Allocation Length specifies the number of bytes that the initiator has allocated for returned data. The disc drive shall terminate the Data-In phase when Allocation Length bytes have been transferred or when all available data have been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.
- [5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

The INQUIRY command returns CHECK CONDITION status only when the disc drive cannot return the requested INQUIRY data.

If an INQUIRY command is received from an initiator with a pending unit attention condition (i.e., before the disc drive reports CHECK CONDITION status), the disc drive performs the INQUIRY command and does not clear the unit attention condition.

The INQUIRY command is typically used by the initiator after a reset or power-up condition to determine the device types for system configuration. To minimize delays after a reset or power-up condition, the standard INQUIRY data is available without incurring any media access delays. Since the disc drive stores some of the INQUIRY data on the device media it may return zeros or ASCII spaces (20h) in those fields until the data is available.

The INQUIRY data may change as the disc drive executes its initialization sequence or in response to a CHANGE DEFINITION command. For example, the disc drive may contain a minimum command set in its non-volatile memory and load its final firmware from the medium when it becomes ready. After it has loaded the firmware it may support more options and therefore return different supported options information in the INQUIRY data.

### **Disc Drive Inquiry Data**

The disc drive standard INQUIRY data contains 36 required bytes, followed by a number of bytes of disc drive specific data that is drive dependent. See individual drive Product Manual. The standard INQUIRY data is given in Table 5.1.1-8.

Table 5.1.1-8. Disc drive Inquiry Data Format

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Device Type [1] Peripheral Qualifier[1]							
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	ANSI-Approved Ver. [2]		
3	AENC 0 [3]	TRMIOP 0 [4]	0	0	Response Data Format			[5]
4	Additional Length (8Fh)							[6]
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	RELADR [7]	WBUS 32 [8]	WBUS 16 [9]	SYNC [10]	LINK- ED [11]	0	CMD QUE [12]	SOFT RE- SET [13]
8 : 15	Vendor Identification							[14]
16 : 31	Product Identification							[15]
32 : 35	Product Revision Level							[16]
36 : 43	Drive Serial Number							[17]
44 : 55	Unused Vendor Specific Area (00h)							
56 : 95	Reserved (00h)							[18]
96 : 143	Copyright Notice							[19]
144 : 147	Distribution Diskette Serial Number							[20]

**Notes.**

- [1] The Peripheral Qualifier and Peripheral Device Type fields identify the device currently connected to the logical unit. If the disc drive is not capable of supporting a device on this logical unit, the Peripheral Qualifier field will be set to 011 and Peripheral Device Type set to 1Fh.
- [2] The ANSI-Approved Version field indicates the implemented version of this standard and is defined below in Table 5.1.1-9.

**Table 5.1.1-9. ANSI-approved version**

Code	Description
0h	The device might or might not comply to an ANSI approved standard.
1h	The device complies to ANSI X3.131-1986 (SCSI-1).
2h	The device complies to ANSI IX3.131-199x (SCSI-2). This code is reserved to designate this standard upon approval by ANSI.

- [3] An asynchronous event notification capability (AENC) bit of zero indicates that the disc drive does not support the asynchronous event notification capability.
- [4] A terminate I/O process (TRMIOP) bit of zero indicates that the disc drive does not support the TERMINATE I/O PROCESS message.
- [5] A Response Data Format value of zero indicates the INQUIRY data format is as specified in the ANSI SCSI-1 standard. A response data format value of one indicates compatibility with some products that were designed prior to the development of the ANSI SCSI-2 standard (i.e. CCS). A response data format value of two indicates that the data shall be in the format specified in the SCSI-2 standard. Response data format values greater than two are reserved.
- [6] The Additional Length field shall specify the length in bytes of the parameters. If the allocation length of the command descriptor block is too small to transfer all of the parameters, the additional length is not adjusted to reflect the truncation.
- [7] A relative addressing (RELADR) bit of one indicates that the disc drive supports the relative addressing mode. If this bit is set to one the linked command (LINKED) bit shall also be set to one since relative addressing can only be used with linked commands. A RELADR bit of zero indicates the disc drive does not support relative addressing.
- [8] A wide bus 32 (WBus32) bit of one indicates that the drive supports 32-bit wide data transfers. A value of zero indicates that the drive does not support 32-bit wide data transfers.
- [9] A wide bus 16 (WBus16) bit of one indicates that the drive supports 16-bit wide data transfers. A value of zero indicates that the drive does not support 16-bit wide data transfers.

**Note.** If the values of both the WBus 16 and WBus 32 bits are zero the drive only supports 8-bit wide data transfers.

- [10] A synchronous transfer (SYNC) bit of one indicates that the disc drive supports synchronous data transfer. A value of zero indicates the disc drive does not support synchronous data transfer.
- [11] A linked command (LINKED) bit of one indicates that the disc drive supports linked commands. A value of zero indicates the disc drive does not support linked commands.
- [12] A command queuing (CMDQUE) bit of one indicates that the disc drive supports tagged command queuing. A value of zero indicates the disc drive does not support tagged command queuing.
- [13] Soft RESET bit of zero indicates that the drive responds to the reset condition with the hard RESET alternative (see section 3.2.2).

A Soft RESET bit of one indicates that the drive responds to the RESET condition with the soft RESET alternative (see section 3.2.2).



*continued from previous page*

- [14] The Vendor Identification field contains the ASCII data giving vendor name ("SEAGATE").
- [15] The Product Identification field contains ASCII data giving the drive model number. The data shall be left-aligned within this field.
- [16] The Product Revision Level field contains the four bytes of ASCII data "XXXX", where the value of XXXX is the last 4 digits of the Firmware Release number.
- [17] Drive Serial Number field contains the 8 bytes of ASCII data "XXXXXXXX", where the value XXXXXXXX is the drive serial number.
- [18] The reserved area from byte 56 through byte 95 is filled with 00h.
- [19] The Copyright Notice field contains the 48 bytes of ASCII data "Copyright (c) 199X Seagate All rights reserved", where "X" indicates the current year.
- [20] The Distribution Diskette Serial Number field contains the 4 bytes of ASCII data "XXXX", where the value XXXX is the Distribution Diskette serial number.

**5.1.1.3.1 Vital product data pages**

The initiator requests the vital product data information by setting the EVPD bit to one and specifying the page code of the desired vital product data. If the disc drive does not implement the requested page it shall return CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

This section describes the vital product data page structure and the vital product data pages that are applicable to the disc drive. These pages are optionally returned by the INQUIRY command and contain specific product information about the disc drive. The vital product data includes unit serial numbers, device operating definitions, firmware release numbers, servo ROM and RAM release numbers and the date code from the manufacturer's defect log.

**Table 5.1.1-10a. Supported vital Product Data Pages (Page 0h)**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier [1]			Peripheral Device Type				[1]
1	Page Code (00h)							[2]
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	Page Length (05h)							[3]
4 : 8	Supported Page List							[4]

**Notes.**

- [1] The Peripheral Qualifier field and the Peripheral Device Type field are as previously defined.
- [2] Page 0h provides a list of all supported vital product data pages. The Page Code field shall be set to the value of the page code field in the INQUIRY command descriptor block.
- [3] The Page Length field specifies the length of the supported page list. If the allocation length is too small to transfer all of the page, the page length shall not be adjusted to reflect the truncation.

continued from previous page

- [4] The Supported Page List field shall contain a list of all vital product data page codes implemented for the disc drive in ascending order beginning with page code 0h. See Table 5.1.1-10b.

**Table 5.1.1-10b. Vital Product Data Page Codes**

Page Code	Description
00h	Supported Vital Product Data Pages
80h	Unit Serial Number Page
81h	Implemented Operating Definitions Page
C0h	Firmware Numbers Page
C1h	Date Code Page
C2h	Jumper Settings Page

**Table 5.1.1-10c. Unit Serial Number Page (PAGE 80h)**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier [1]			Peripheral Device Type				[1]
1	Page Code (80h)							[2]
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	Page Length (08h)							[3]
4 : 11	Product Serial Number							[4]

**Notes.**

- [1] The Peripheral Qualifier field and the Peripheral Device Type field are as defined previously.
- [2] Page 80h provides the product serial number for the disc drive (See Table 5.1.1-10c).
- [3] The Page Length field specifies the length of the product serial number. If the allocation length is too small to transfer all of the page, the page length shall not be adjusted to reflect the truncation.
- [4] The Product Serial Number field contains ASCII data. The least significant ASCII character of the serial number shall appear as the last byte of a successful data transfer. If the product serial number is not available, the disc drive returns ASCII spaces (20h) in this field.

Table 5.1.1-10d. Implemented Operating Definition Page (PAGE 81h)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier [1]			Peripheral Device Type				[1]
1	Page Code (81h)							[2]
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	Page Length (04h)							[3]
4	0	Current Operating Definition						[4]
5	SAVIMP	Default Operating Definition						[5]
6	SAVIMP	Supported Operating Definition						[5]
7	SAVIMP	Supported Operating Definition						[5]

**Notes.**

- [1] The Peripheral Qualifier Field and the Peripheral Device Type field are as defined previously. (See Table 5.1.1-8 notes).
- [2] Page 81h defines the current operating definition, the default operating definition, and which operating definitions are implemented by the disc drive. These operating definition values are specified in the CHANGE DEFINITION command (see Table 5.1.1-10d).
- [3] The Page Length field specifies the length of the following operating definitions. If the allocation length of the command descriptor block is too small to transfer all of the page, the page length shall not be adjusted to reflect the truncation.
- [4] The current operating definition field returns the value of the present operating definition. The default operating definition field returns the value of the operating definition the disc drive uses when power is applied if no operating definition is saved (see Table 5.1.1-10e).
- [5] For each operating definition there is an associated save implemented (SAVIMP) bit. A SAVIMP bit of zero indicates that the corresponding operating definition parameter cannot be saved. A SAVIMP bit of one indicates that the corresponding operating definition parameter can be saved. The disc drive saves the default operating definition and all supported operating definitions.

Table 5.1.1-10e. Operating Definition Field

Code	Operating description
00h	Use Current Operating Definition
01h	SCSI X3.131-1986 Operating Definition
03h	SCSI-2 X3.131-199x Operating Definition

**Table 5.1.1-10fa. Firmware Numbers Page (page C0h)  
(Applies to model families ST11200 and ST3600)**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	Peripheral Qualifier [i]		Peripheral Device Type						[1]
1	Page Code (C0h)							[2]	
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
3	Page Length (10h)							[3]	
4 : 11	SCSI Firmware Release number							[4]	
12 : 19	ASCII space characters								
20 : 27	Servo ROM Release number							[4]	

**Notes.**

- [1] The Peripheral Qualifier field and the Peripheral Device Type field are as defined previously.  
(See Table 5.1.1-8 notes).
- [2] Page C0h provides the firmware numbers for the disc drive (see Table 5.1.1-10fb).
- [3] The Page Length field specifies the length of the product firmware numbers. If the allocation length is too small to transfer all of the page, the page length shall not be adjusted to reflect the truncation.
- [4] The firmware numbers fields contain ASCII data. The least significant ASCII character of the Drive firmware number shall appear as the last byte of a successful data transfer.

Table 5.1.1-10fb. Firmware Numbers Page (page C0h)  
 (Applies to model families other than those covered by  
 Table 5.1.1-10fa)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier [1]		Peripheral Device Type					[1]
1	Page Code (C0h)							
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	Page Length							[3]
4 : 11	SCSI Firmware Release number							[4]
12 : 19	Servo RAM Release number							[4]
20 : 27	Servo ROM Release number							[4]
28 : 31	Servo RAM Release date in ASCII							
32 : 35	Servo ROM Release date in ASCII							

**Notes.**

- [1] The Peripheral Qualifier field and the Peripheral Device Type field are as defined previously. (See Table 5.1.1-8 notes).
- [2] Page C0h provides the firmware numbers for the disc drive (see Table 5.1.1-10fb).
- [3] The Page Length field specifies the length of the product firmware numbers. If the allocation length is too small to transfer all of the page, the page length shall not be adjusted to reflect the truncation.
- [4] The firmware numbers fields contain ASCII data. The least significant ASCII character of the Drive firmware number shall appear as the last byte of a successful data transfer.

Table 5.1.1-10g. Date Code Page (PAGE C1h)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier [1]			Peripheral Device Type				[1]
1	Page Code (C1h)							[2]
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	Page Length (03h)							[3]
4 : 6	Date Code							[4]

**Notes.**

- [1] The Peripheral Qualifier field and the Peripheral Device Type field are as defined previously. (see Table 5.1.1-8 notes).
- [2] Page C1h provides the date code from the disc drive defect list (see Table 5.1.1-10g).
- [3] The Page Length field specifies the length of the product date code. If the allocation length is too small to transfer all of the page, the page length shall not be adjusted to reflect the truncation.
- [4] The Date Code field contains BCD data. The least significant hex character of the date code shall appear as the last byte of a successful data transfer.

Date is represented by 4 binary bits per date digit (0-9 hex), giving 6 hex digits for a date of the form mmddyy. Add 30h to each hex digit to create a date in ASCII form (30-39 in ASCII is 0-9 decimal).

Table 5.1.1-10h. Jumper Settings Page (Page C2h)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier [1]			Peripheral Device Type				[1]
1	Page Code (C2h)							[2]
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	Page Length (02h)							[3]
4	DS [4]	MS [5]	WP [6]	PE [7]	DRIVE ID [8]			
5	Rsvd	Rsvd	Rsvd	Rsvd	Rsvd	Rsvd	Rsvd	Term Enable [9] [10]

**Notes.**

- [1] The Peripheral Qualifier and Peripheral Device Type are as defined previously. (See Table 5.1.1-8 notes).
- [2] Page C2h provides all the jumper settings for the drive. The bits in byte 4 indicate which jumpers are on.
- [3] The Page Length field specifies the length of the Jumper Setting Page. If the allocation length is too small to transfer all of the page, the page length shall not be adjusted to reflect the truncation.
- [4] Delayed Motor Start (DS) bit when set to 1 indicates that this jumper is on.
- [5] Motor Start (MS) bit when set to 1 indicates that the jumper is on.
- [6] Write Protected (WP) bit when set to 1 indicates that the write protect jumper is on.
- [7] Parity Enable (PE) bit when set to 1 indicates that SCSI parity error checking jumper is on.

*continued from previous page*

[8] The Drive ID is shown below in the table. Bit 3 is the most significant bit and bit 0 is the least significant bit.

Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Drive ID
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	0	2
0	0	1	1	3
0	1	0	0	4
0	1	0	1	5
0	1	1	0	6
0	1	1	1	7
1	0	0	0	8
1	0	0	1	9
1	0	1	0	10
1	0	1	1	11
1	1	0	0	12
1	1	0	1	13
1	1	1	0	14
1	1	1	1	15

[9] Terminator Enable (TE). Not used on all drives. See Drive Product Manual Vol. 1 for applicability.

[10] It is not presently possible to return information on the Terminator Power (TP) jumpers.



**5.1.1.4 Copy command (18h)**

Not Implemented. If received the disc drive sends a "Check Condition" status and a Sense Key of "Illegal Request".

**5.1.1.5 Receive Diagnostic Results Command (1Ch)**

Table 5.1.1-11. Receive Diagnostic Results Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	Allocation Length In Bytes (MSB)							[2]
4	Allocation Length In Bytes (LSB)							[2]
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [3]

The Receive Diagnostic Results command requests analysis data be sent to the initiator after completion of a Send Diagnostic command. The disc drive supports the optional Page format, wherein the initiator sends additional pages after a Send Diagnostic command. These additional pages have a page code that specifies to the disc drive the format of the data to be returned after it receives a Receive Diagnostic Results command.

If no data in the optional Page format was requested by the Send Diagnostics command (0 in bit 4 of Table 5.1.1-15), the data returned to the initiator is in the format shown in Table 5.1.1-12.

If the Send Diagnostics command requested either page 00h or page 40h (the only two optional pages supported by the disc drive), data returned is in the format shown in Table 5.1.1-13 or 5.1.1-14, respectively.

All FRU and error code definitions are unique to this product and intended for Factory/Field Maintenance personnel.

**Notes.**

[1] LUN must be zero.

[2] The Allocation Length shall specify the number of bytes the initiator has allocated for returned data. An Allocation Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. Any other value indicates the maximum number of bytes that shall be transferred. The disc drive terminates the Data In phase when Allocation Length bytes have been transferred or when all available data has been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

[3] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

Table 5.1.1-12. Diagnostic Data Bytes

Code	Byte	Description	
00h	0	Additional Length (MSB)	[1]
28h	1	Additional Length (LSB)	[1]
XXh	2	FRU Code (most probable)	[2]
XXh	3	FRU Code	[2]
XXh	4	FRU Code	[2]
XXh	5	FRU Code (least probable)	[2]
XXh	6	Error Code (MSB)	[3]
V.U.	7	Error Code (LSB)	[4]
V.U.	8 thru n	Additional Vendor Unique Fault Information	[5]

**Notes.****[1] Additional Length:**

This two byte value indicates the number of additional bytes included in the diagnostic data list. For example, if no product unique byte (byte 7) is available, this value would be 0006h. A value of 0000h means that there are no additional bytes.

**[2] FRU Code:**

A Field Replaceable Unit code is a byte that identifies an assembly that may have failed. The codes will be listed in probability order, with the most probable assembly listed first and the least probable listed last. A code of 00h indicates there is no FRU information and a code of 01h indicates the entire unit should be replaced. Other values have product unique meanings.

**[3] Error Code:**

This two byte value provides information designating which part of a diagnostic operation has failed. The byte 7 error code is vendor unique and defined as follows.

---

*continued from previous page*

[4] Vendor Unique

Diagnostic Fault Codes

01h	Formatter Diagnostic Error
02h	Microprocessor RAM Diagnostic Error
04h	No Drive Ready
08h	No Sector or Index Detected
09h	Fatal Hardware Error While Doing Drive Diagnostics
0Ch	No Drive Command Complete
10h	Unable to Set Drive Sector Size
14h	Unable to Clear Drive Attention
18h	Unable to Start Spindle Motor
20h	Unable to Recal Drive
30h	Unable to Send Write Current Data to Drive
34h	Unable to Issue Drive Seek Command
40h	Unable to Read User Table From Drive
41h	Ran Out of Sectors While Doing Drive Diagnostics
42h	Unable to Read Reallocation Table
43h	Unable to Read ETF Log
45h	Firmware Read from Disc or Sent by Host has an Invalid Checksum
60h	Thermal Calibration Failure
70h	Microprocessor Internal Timer Error
80h	Buffer Controller Diagnostic Error
81h	Buffer RAM Diagnostic Error
C1h	Data Mismatch While Doing Drive Diagnostics

[5] Additional Vendor Unique codes (Not Available).

If the Send Diagnostics command requested the Supported Diagnostics Pages list (PF bit = 1), the disc drive returns data in the format shown in Table 5.1.1-13 after receiving the Receive Diagnostics Results command. It lists all of the diagnostics pages supported by the disc drive.

**Table 5.1.1-13. Supported Diagnostic Pages**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	Page Code (00h)								
1	Reserved								
2	(MSB)	Page Length (n-3)				[1]			
3								(LSB)	
4 : n	Supported Page List [2]								

**Notes.**

[1] The page length field specifies the length in bytes of the following supported page list.

[2] The supported page list field shall contain a list of all diagnostic page codes implemented by the disc drive in ascending order beginning with page code 00h. The disc drive presently supports only pages 00h (Table 5.1.1-13) and 40h (Table 5.1.1-14).

**Translate Address Page**

The translate address page allows the initiator to translate a logical block address into a physical sector address or a physical sector address to a logical block address. The address to be translated is passed to the target during the data-out phase associated with the Send Diagnostic command and the results are returned to the initiator during the data-in phase following the Receive Diagnostic Results command. The translated address is returned in the translate address page-Receive Diagnostic (Table 5.1.1-14).

**Table 5.1.1-14. Translate Address Page - Receive Diagnostic**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	Page Code (40h)				[1]				
1	Reserved								
2	(MSB)	Page Length				[2]			
3	(000A) or (0002)							(LSB)	
4	Reserved				Supplied Format [3]				
5	RAREA [4]	ALTSEC [5]	ALTTK [6]	RSVD	Translated Format			[7]	
6 : 13	Translated Address				[8]	(if available)			

**Notes.**

- [1] The translate address page contains a four byte page header which specifies the page code and length followed by two bytes which describe the translated address followed by the translated address.
- [2] The Page Length field contains the number of parameter bytes which follow.
- [3] The Supplied Format field contains the value from the Send Diagnostic command supplied format field (see Table 5.1.1-17).
- [4] A reserved area (RAREA) bit of one indicates that all or part of the translated address falls within a reserved area of the medium (e.g. speed tolerance gap, alternate sector, vendor reserved area, etc.). If the entire translated address falls within a reserved area the target may not return a translated address. An RAREA bit of zero indicates that no part of the translated address falls within a reserved area of the medium.

**Table 5.1.1-14a. Address Field Logical Block Address Format**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB) _____ Logical Block Address _____ (LSB)							
1								
2								
3								
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

**Table 5.1.1-14b. Address Field Physical Sector Address Format**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB) _____ Cylinder Number _____ (LSB)							
1								
2								
3	Head Number							
4	Sector Number							
5								
6								
7								

- [5] An alternate sector (ALTSEC) bit of one indicates that the translated address is physically located in an alternate sector of the medium. If the disc drive cannot determine if all or part of the translated address is located in an alternate sector it shall set this bit to zero. An ALTSEC bit of zero indicates that no part of the translated address is located in an alternate sector of the medium or that the disc drive is unable to determine this information.
- [6] An alternate track (ALTTRK) bit of one indicates that part or all of the translated address is located on an alternate track of the medium or the disc drive cannot determine if all or part of the translated address is located on an alternate track. An ALTTRK bit of zero indicates that no part of the translated address is located on an alternate track of the medium.
- [7] The Translated Format field contains the value from the Send Diagnostic command translate format field (see Table 5.1.1-17). The values are 000 (Logical block format) or 101 (Physical sector address format).
- [8] The Translated Address field contains the address the target translated from the address supplied by the initiator in the Send Diagnostic command. This field shall be in the format specified in the translate format field. The supported formats are shown in Tables 5.1.1-14a and 5.1.1-14b.

### 5.1.1.6 Send Diagnostic Command (1Dh)

Table 5.1.1-15. Send Diagnostic Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1
1	Logical Unit No. 0 0 0			PF[1] 0	RSVD	SELF TEST [2]	DEVOFL [3]	UnitOFL [4]
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	Parameter List Length (MSB) 0 0 0			0	0	0	0	0
4	Parameter List Length (LSB) 0 0 0			0	(see explanation below)			[5]
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link

This command requests that the disc drive perform diagnostic tests on itself, or perform other optional operations. Table 5.1.1-15 shows the format of the Send Diagnostics command as implemented by the disc drive. When the Self Test bit is zero (see note [2]), this command is usually followed by a Receive Diagnostics Results command and a subsequent data-in phase that returns data to the initiator. Using this latter procedure of Send Diagnostics/Receive Diagnostics Results commands the initiator can ask the drive to return a list of optional operations it supports (Table 5.1.1-16) and then request a supported additional operation. The disc drive supports only the Translate Address operation (Table 5.1.1-17).



### Translate Address Page - Send Diagnostic

The translate address page allows the initiator to translate a logical block address into a physical sector address or a physical sector into a logical block address. The address to be translated is passed to the disc drive with Send Diagnostic command and the results are returned to the initiator during the data in phase following the Receive Diagnostic Results command. The format of the translate address page - Send Diagnostic is shown in Table 5.1.1-17. The translated address is returned in the translate address page returned after the Receive Diagnostic Results Command (see Table 5.1.1-11).

**Table 5.1.1-17. Translate Address Page - Send Diagnostic**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Page Code (40h)							
1	Reserved							
2	(MSB) _____							
3	Page Length (000Ah)						_____ (LSB)	
4	Reserved					Supplied Format [1]		
5	Reserved					Translate Format [2]		
6 : 13	Address To Translate [3]							

#### Notes.

- [1] The Supplied Format field specifies the format of the address to translate field. The valid values for this field are 000 for logical block address format or 101 for physical sector address format. If the disc drive does not support the requested format it shall terminate the Send Diagnostic command with Check Condition status. The sense key shall be set to Illegal Request and an additional sense code shall be set to Invalid Field In Parameter List.
- [2] The Translate Format field specifies the format to which the initiator would like the address to be translated. The valid values for this field are 000 for logical block address format or 101 for physical sector address format. The Translate Format field must be different than the Supplied Format Field. If the disc drive does not support the requested format it shall terminate the command with Check Condition status. The sense key shall be set to Illegal Request and an additional sense code shall be set to Invalid Field In Parameter List.
- [3] The Address to Translate field contains a single address the initiator is requesting the disc drive to translate. The format of this field is defined by the Supplied Format Field. The supported formats are shown in Table 5.1.1-14a and Table 5.1.1-14b.

For systems which support disconnection, the disc drive will disconnect while executing this command.



**5.1.2 Group 1 Commands for all device types**

The following commands are applicable for all device types, but the disc drive only implements those indicated in the paragraphs following.

OP Code	Command Name	Section
39h	Compare Command	5.1.2.1
3Ah	Copy and Verify Command	5.1.2.2
3Bh	Write Buffer	5.1.2.3
3Ch	Read Buffer	5.1.2.4

**5.1.2.1 Compare command (39h)**

Not Implemented. A "Check Condition" Status is sent if received.

**5.1.2.2 Copy and Verify command (3Ah)**

Not Implemented. A "Check Condition" status is sent if received.

**5.1.2.3 Write Data Buffer command (3Bh)**

Table 5.1.2-1. Write Data Buffer Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1
1	Logical Unit No. [1]			RSVD		Mode [2]		
2	Buffer ID							[5]
3	(MSB)							[6]
4	Buffer Offset							[6]
5								[6]
6	(MSB)							[6]
7	Byte Transfer Length [3]							
8								(LSB)
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [4]

The Write Buffer command may be used in conjunction with the Read Buffer command as a diagnostic function for testing the disc drive's data buffer memory and the SCSI bus integrity. When used in a diagnostic mode, the medium shall not be accessed during the execution of this command. Additional modes are provided for downloading and saving executable micro-code.

The function of this command and the meaning of the fields within the Command Descriptor Block depend on the mode field (Byte 1, data bits 0, 1, 2).

**Notes.**

[1] LUN must be zero

[2] The mode field is defined in the following table and in the referenced sections.

DB2	DB1	DB0	Mode Definition
0	0	0	write combined header and data (section 5.1.2.3.1)
0	1	0	Write data (section 5.1.2.3.2)
1	0	1	Download microcode and save (section 5.1.2.3.3)

[3] See paragraph 5.1.2.3.1, 5.1.2.3.2 and 5.1.2.3.3

[4] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

[5][6] Not implemented by drives supported by this manual. Must be zeros.

**5.1.2.3.1 Combined Header and Data Mode (000b)**

In this mode, data to be written to the disc drives data buffer is preceded by a four byte header.

The Byte Transfer Length includes a four byte header and the Write Buffer data [1]. A transfer length of zero indicates that no data transfer shall take place. This condition shall not create the Check Condition status. If the transfer length is greater than the Buffer Capacity reported by the Read Buffer header, the disc drive shall create the Check Condition status with the Sense Key of illegal Request. In this case no data shall be transferred from the initiator.

It shall not be considered an error to request a transfer length less than the Buffer Capacity.

The write data following the Write Buffer CDB consists of a 4 byte write buffer header (which always precedes the data) plus the data to be written to the data buffer as follows:

**Table 5.1.2-2. Write Buffer Header**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4 - n	Data To Be Written Into Disc Drive Buffer							

**Notes.**

[1] See individual Product Manual table of SCSI INTERFACE COMMANDS SUPPORTED (Sec. 11.3) for size of buffer.

The following applies to mode 000b:

**Byte Transfer Length (Table 5.1.2-1, CDB Bytes 6, 7 and 8):**

The byte transfer length specifies the maximum number of bytes that shall be transferred during the Data Out phase to be stored in the drive buffer. This number includes the four bytes of header.

**Control Byte (CDB Byte 9):**

All bits zero.

**5.1.2.3.2 Write data only**

The byte transfer length specifies the maximum number of bytes that shall be transferred during the Data Out phase to be stored in the drive buffer. No header bytes are included. The buffer ID and buffer offset fields are not used by drives supported by this manual. Must be zero.

**5.1.2.3.3 Download and Save Microcode mode (101b)**

In this mode, vendor-unique executable microcode (which is not preceded by a 4 byte header) shall be transferred to the control memory space of the target and, if the download is completed successfully, shall also be saved. The downloaded code shall then be effective after each power cycle and reset until it is supplanted in another download microcode and save operation. When the download microcode and save command has been completed successfully the target shall generate a "Unit Attention Condition" for all initiators except the one that issued the download microcode and save command. The Attention Condition shall be set to "Microcode has been downloaded" (Sense data error code 3F 01h). Following the downloading of new microcode the drive may need to be reformatted before it can perform properly.

For this mode (101b) the command bytes of Table 5.1.2-1 are interpreted as shown below:

**Byte Transfer Length (CDB bytes 6, 7 and 8):**

The transfer length in bytes of the downloadable code. This value must be the exact length of the download data. A value of zero signifies no data transfer and shall not create an error. A value of one signifies one byte of download data, etc.

**Control Byte (CDB byte 9):**

All bits zero.

5.1.2.4 Read Data Buffer command (3Ch)

Table 5.1.2-3. Read Buffer

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0
1	Logical Unit No [1] 0 0		0	RSVD 0 0		Mode [2] 0 0 0		
2	Buffer ID [5]							
3	(MSB) Buffer Offset							[6]
4								[6]
5								[6] (LSB)
6	(MSB) Allocation Length [2]							
7								
8								(LSB)
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	[4] Link

The Read Buffer command is used in conjunction with the Write Buffer command as a diagnostic function for testing disc drive memory and the SCSI bus integrity. This command shall not alter the medium. Command format is shown in Table 5.1.2-3.

Notes.

[1] LUN must be zero.

[2] Read Buffer Mode Field. The interpretation of data bits 0-2 is given in the following table and in paragraphs following the table.

DB2	DB1	DB0	
0	0	0	Read combined descriptor header and data (section 5.1.2.4.1)
0	1	0	Read data (section 5.1.2.4.2)
0	1	1	Read descriptor (section 5.1.2.4.3)

5.1.2.4.1 Read Combined Descriptor Header and Data mode (000b) (see Table 5.1.2-4)

In this mode, a four byte Read Buffer header followed by the data bytes are returned to the initiator during the Data In phase. The buffer ID and the buffer offset fields are not used by drives supported by this manual, and must be zero.

Table 5.1.2-4. Read Buffer Header (Mode 000b)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	(MSB) Buffer Capacity							
2								
3								(LSB)

**5.1.2.4.2 Read data**

In this mode, the DATA IN phase contains buffer data only with no header. The buffer ID and buffer offset fields are not used.

**5.1.2.4.3 Descriptor mode (011b)**

In this mode, a maximum of four bytes of READ BUFFER descriptor information are returned. If there is no buffer associated with the specified buffer ID, the target shall return all zeros in the READ BUFFER descriptor. The buffer offset field is reserved in this mode. The allocation length should be set to four or greater. The target shall transfer the lesser of the allocation length or four bytes of READ BUFFER descriptor. The READ BUFFER descriptor is defined as shown in the Table following.

**Table 5.1.2.4.3-1. READ BUFFER descriptor**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	Offset Boundary								
1	(MSB)	Buffer Capacity							
2									
3								(LSB)	

The offset boundary field returns the boundary alignment with the selected buffer for subsequent WRITE BUFFER and READ BUFFER commands. The value contained in the offset boundary field shall be interpreted as a power of two.

The value contained in the buffer field of subsequent WRITE BUFFER and READ BUFFER commands should be a multiple of  $2^{\text{offset boundary}}$  as shown in table following.

**Table 5.1.2.4.3-2 Buffer Offset boundary**

Offset Boundary	$2^{\text{Offset Boundary}}$	Buffer Offsets
0	$2^0 = 1$	Byte boundaries
1	$2^1 = 2$	Even-byte boundaries
2	$2^2 = 4$	Four-byte boundaries
3	$2^3 = 8$	Eight-byte boundaries
4	$2^4 = 16$	16-byte boundaries
.	.	.
.	.	.
FFh	Not applicable	0 is the only supported buffer offset.

The buffer capacity field shall return the size of the selected buffer in bytes

**IMPLEMENTORS NOTE:** In a multi-tasking system, a buffer may be altered between the WRITE BUFFER and READ BUFFER commands by another task. Buffer testing applications may wish to insure that only a single task is active. Use of reservations (to all logical units on the device) may also be helpful in avoiding buffer alteration between these two commands.

continued from previous page

- [3] Drive specific size also depends on whether cache is enabled as shown in Table 5.2.1-27 (RCD = 0) or not (RCD = 1). See drive Product Manual under list of SCSI commands supported (Section 11.3).

The buffer capacity field specifies the total number of data bytes that are available in the disc drive's data buffer (see 5.1.2.3.1 and 5.1.2.3.2). This number is not reduced to reflect the allocation length nor is it reduced to reflect the actual number of bytes written using the Write Buffer command. Following the Read Buffer header, the disc drive shall transfer data from its data buffer. The disc drive terminates the Data In phase when allocation length bytes of header plus data have been transferred or when all available header and buffer data have been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

- [4] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.  
 [5][6] Not implemented by drives supported by this manual. Must be zero.

### 5.1.3 Group 2 commands for all device types

This group consists of the following supported 10 byte commands:

- 5.1.3.1 Change Definition Command (40h)  
 5.1.3.2 Log Select Command (4Ch)  
 5.1.3.3 Log Sense Command (4Dh)

#### 5.1.3.1 Change Definition command (40h)

Table 5.1.3-1. Change Definition command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	Logical Unit No. [1]			Reserved				
2	Reserved						Save [2]	
3	RSVD	Definition Parameter [3]						
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Parameter Data Length [4]							
9	Control [5]							

The Change Definition command (Table 5.1.3-1) modifies the operating definition of the disc drive with respect to commands from all initiators.

The drive maintains only one operating definition and it applies to *all* initiators in the system.

#### Notes.

- [1] The LUN must be zero.  
 [2] A save control bit (Save) of zero indicates that the disc drive shall not save the operating definition. A Save bit of one indicates that the disc drive shall save the operating definition to non-volatile memory.  
 [3] The definition parameter field is defined in Table 5.1.3-2.

Table 5.1.3-2. Definition Parameter Field

Value	Meaning of Definition Parameter
00h	Use Current Operating Definition
01h	SCSI X3.131-1986 Operating Definition
02h*	CCS Operating Definition
03h	SCSI-2 X3.131-198X Operating Definition
04-3Fh	Reserved
40-7Fh	Vendor Specific

\*The drive treats an 02 option as if it had been 01.

The current operating definition parameter values establish operating definitions compatible with the appropriate SCSI specification.

[4] The parameter data length field specifies the length in bytes of the parameter data that shall be transferred from the initiator to the target. A parameter data length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error. Parameter data lengths greater than zero indicate the number of bytes of parameter data that shall be transferred.

The parameter data is not used by the disc drive.

[5] Control is not used by the drive.

The operating definition is modified after successful completion of the command. The disc drive shall consider the command successfully completed when it detects the assertion of the ACK signal for the Command Complete message. The initiator should verify the new operating definition by issuing an Inquiry command requesting the implemented operating definition page (see Table 5.1.1-10d).

It is permissible for a SCSI-2 device that has its definition changed to a SCSI-1 device to accept a Change Definition command.

If the Change Definition command is not executed successfully for any reason, the operating definition shall remain the same as it was before the Change Definition command was attempted.

After a power-on condition or a hard Reset condition, the drive shall set its initial operating definition to the last saved value, if saving is implemented, or its default value, if saving is not implemented. Default is SCSI 2 mode.

### 5.1.3.2 Log Select command (4Ch) [1]

The Log Select command provides a means for an initiator to manage statistical information about the drive operation. This information is logged within the drive and can be sent to the initiator in response to a Log Sense command from the initiator. The Log Select command format is shown in Table 5.1.3.2-1. In the Data Out phase following the command, the initiator sends zero or more pages of control parameters in the Log Page Format of Table 5.1.3.2-3. These Log Pages contain parameters that command the drive to change selected threshold, or cumulative values of any or all drive logs. Numbers in brackets [ ] refer to notes following tables.

The following tables in section 5.1.3.2 apply for the Log Select command as indicators of functions that command the drive to perform or enable for performance, control parameter bits the drive shall set/reset/save, log counts that shall be kept, and etc. For the Log Sense command[2] these tables apply as indicators of functions the drive reports back to the host that it is enabled to perform, control parameter bits that are set/reset/saved, log counts that are being kept, and etc. Though the language of the descriptions is for the Log Select case, the application to the Log Sense case should also be considered.

The drives represented by this Interface Manual do not support keeping independent sets of log parameters (one set for each initiator in the system). If at some point log parameters are changed (by a Log Select command) that affect initiators other than the initiator that sent the Log Select command, the drive generates a unit attention condition for those other initiators, but not for the one that issued the Log Select command. When the other initiators at a future time connect to the drive, the first command attempted would not execute and a check condition status would be issued by the drive. A Request Sense command would normally follow and a unit attention condition sense code be returned to these other initiators with an additional sense code of LOG PARAMETERS CHANGED. (one by one as they connect to the drive) See Section 4.6, UnitAttention Condition.

---

[1] Not supported by Standard OEM drives, but is a factory installed option.

[2] Section 5.1.3.3 describes the Log Sense command, but the tables of this section that apply are not repeated there.



Table 5.1.3.2-1. The Log Select command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0
1	Logical Unit Num 0 0 0			Reserved			PCR [1]	SP [2]
2	PC [3]			Reserved				
3						Reserved		
4						Reserved		
5						Reserved		
6						Reserved		
7	(MSB)			Parameter List Length [4]				
8								(LSB)
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag [5]	Link [5]

[1] **Parameter Code Reset (PCR).** A PCR bit of one and a Parameter List Length of zero causes all implemented parameters to be set to the drive-defined default values (most likely zero). If the PCR bit is one and the parameter list length is greater than zero, the command is terminated with a Check Condition Status. The sense key shall be set to Illegal Request and the additional sense code shall be set to Invalid Field in CDB. A PCR bit of Zero specifies that the log parameters shall not be reset.

[2] **Save Parameters (SP) bit.** An SP bit of one indicates that after performing the specified Log Select operation the drive shall save to non-volatile memory all Log Select parameters identified as savable by the DS bit in the Log parameter sections of the Log Page (see Table 5.1.3.2-3). An SP bit of zero specifies that parameters shall not be saved. Log Parameters are also saved after each thermal calibration if the TSD bit in the Log Parameter pages (see Table 5.1.3.2-4) is zero.

It is not an error to set the SP bit to one and to set the DS bit of a log parameter to one. In this case, the parameter value for that log parameter is not saved.

[3] **Page Control field (PC).** This field defines the type of log parameter the initiator selects to change with the Log Select Command. The PC field is defined in Table 5.1.3.2-2.

Table 5.1.3.2-2. Page Control Field

PC Field Value	Type of Log Parameter
00b	Log Current Threshold Values
01b	Log Current Cumulative Values
10b	Log Default Threshold Values
11b	Log Default Cumulative Values

The drive only updates the cumulative values to reflect the number of events experienced by the drive, but the initiator can set the threshold or cumulative log (00 or 01) parameter values using the Log Select command with the PC field set as applicable.

The drive sets the current log values to default values in response to a Log Select command with the parameter list length set to zero and the PC field set to the applicable value (10 or 11) per Table 5.1.3.2-2.

*continued from previous page*

If an initiator attempts to change a current threshold value that is not available or not implemented for that log parameter, the drive shall terminate the Log Select command with a Check Condition status, the sense key set to Illegal Request and an additional sense code set to Invalid Field In Parameter List. The saving of current threshold parameters and the criteria for the current threshold being met are controlled by bits in the Parameter Control Byte (PCB) (byte 2 of each of the Log Parameter pages).

- [4] Parameter List Length. This specifies the length in bytes of the parameter list that shall be transferred from the initiator to the drive during the Data Out phase. A parameter list length of zero indicates that no pages shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

If the initiator sends page codes or parameter codes within the parameter list that are reserved or not implemented by the drive, the drive shall terminate the Log Select command with Check Condition status. The sense key shall be set to Illegal Request and the additional sense code set to Invalid Field In Parameter List.

If a parameter list length results in the truncation of any log parameter, the drive shall terminate the command with Check Condition status. The sense key shall be set to Illegal Request and the additional sense code set to Invalid Field In CDB.

In the Data Out phase of the Log Select command the initiator may send none, one, or more data pages, each of which is in the format specified in Table 5.1.3.2-3 and which contain control information pertaining to the management and reporting of various drive log parameters. If multiple pages are sent out following the command CDB, they should be sent in ascending page code value order. Also, Log Parameters in each Log Page would be sent in Log Parameter Code ascending order (see Table 5.1.3.2-3 Note 4). The Page Code (byte 0) specifies which log the page pertains to. The Page Code assignments are listed in Table 5.1.3.2-6. Initiator cannot send page zero.

- [5] Flag and Link bits used as defined in paragraph 4.2.6.

The Log Sense command and its data-in phase also use the format of Table 5.1.3.2-3 so explanations pertaining to the table apply generally to both Log Select and Log Sense commands, with differences noted. However, only one log page is selected and returned with each Log Sense command. See Section 5.1.3.3. This Table is not repeated in Section 5.1.3.3.

Table 5.1.3.2-3. Log Page Format

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved			Page Code [1]				
1	Reserved							
2	(MSB)	Page Length (n-3) [2]						
3								(LSB)

Log Parameter Structure(s) [3]

4 to x+3	Log Parameter (First) [4] (Length X bytes)							
.	.							
.	.							
.	.							
n-Y to	Log Parameter (last) [4] (Length Y bytes)							

**Notes for Table 5.1.3.2-3.**

- [1] Page codes implemented are given in Table 5.1.3.2-6.
- [2] Gives the total number of bytes of Log Parameter structures that follow these first four control block bytes. If the initiator sends a page length that results in the truncation of any parameter, the target shall terminate the command with Check Condition status. The sense key shall be set to Illegal Request with the additional sense code set to Invalid Field In Parameter List.
- [3] Most log pages contain one or more special data structures called Log Parameters. Log Parameters may be data counters that record a count of a particular event (or events) or list parameters (strings) that contain a description of a particular event. List parameters are not currently supported by the drives represented by this manual.
- [4] Each Log Parameter structure begins with a four byte parameter header followed by one or more bytes of parameter value data. Log Parameter structures are in the format given in Table 5.1.3.2-4.

Table 5.1.3.2-4. Log Parameters

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB) Parameter Code [1]							
1								(LSB)
2	DU [2]	DS [3]	TSD [4]	ETC [5]	TMC [6]		RES- RVD	LP [7]
3	Parameter Length (n-3 bytes)							[8]
4	--							--
:	--	Parameter Value [9]						--
n								--

**Notes for Table 5.1.3.2-4**

[1] The parameter code field identifies the specific parameter that is being transferred with the Log Page. These codes are listed and explained in the individual page code descriptions following Table 5.1.3.2-6.

Byte 2 is referred to as the parameter control byte. The meanings of the various fields are discussed in notes [2] through [7]. For a Log Select command these bits perform a control function, but on a Log Sense command they only report the drive settings of these bits in this same format on the data-in part of the Log Sense command.

[2] Disable Update (DU). For the Log Select command, this applies only to the cumulative log parameter values (indicated by 01 in the PC field of the Log Select and Log Sense command descriptor block). The drive can set this bit to one or zero also (see note [7] following).

The DU flag bit is defined as follows:

- (a) A zero value indicates that the drive shall update the log parameter value to reflect all events that should be logged by that parameter.
- (b) A one value indicates that the drive shall not update the log parameter value except in response to a Log Select command that specifies a new value for the parameter.

The DU flag is set to one when the current cumulative value of the parameter counter it controls reaches its maximum value (see Note 8). Upon reaching this maximum value, the data counter does not wrap around and start over at zero. Incrementing of other counters within the same log pages ceases. Counters do not restart automatically if the overflowed counter is re-initialized. If the data counter reaches its maximum value during the execution of a command, the drive completes the command. Drive counter updates are performed in the background. This means a counter may overflow long after a command has completed, so the drive must treat this condition as a UnitAttention with the Additional Sense code set to Log Counter at max for all initiators if RLEC=1 (Report Log exception condition bit of the Control Mode Page 0Ah).

Since the drive uses volatile memory to hold cumulative values, they will be lost when a power cycle occurs. Unless the initiator commands the drive to save them to non-volatile memory using a Log Select or Log Sense command with the SP bit set to one.

*continued from previous page*

The DU bit is not defined for threshold values (indicated by the PC field of the Log Sense command descriptor block) nor for list parameters (indicated by the LP bit). The drive ignores the value of DU bits in a Log Select command applicable to threshold values or list parameters.

- [3] **Disable Save (DS).** If DS is zero it indicates that the drive shall support (Log Select)/supports (Log Sense data) saving for that log parameter. The drive shall save/does save the current cumulative and the current threshold parameter values in response to a Log Select or Log Sense command with a SP bit of one. A DS bit of one indicates that the drive shall not/does not support saving that log parameter in response to a Log Select or Log Sense command with a SP bit of one.
- [4] **Target Save Disable (TSD).** A zero indicates that the drive shall save frequently enough to insure statistical significance. The drive's method is to save after each thermal calibration, which is once every ten minutes. A one bit indicates that the drive shall not/does not use its save method.
- [5] **Enable Threshold Comparison (ETC).** A one indicates that a comparison to the threshold value shall be (Log Select)/is (Log Sense data) performed whenever the cumulative value is updated. A bit of zero indicates the comparison shall not be/is not performed. The value of the ETC bit is the same for both the threshold and cumulative parameters.
- [6] **Threshold Met Criteria (TMC).** This field defines the basis for comparison of the cumulative and threshold values. See Table 5.1.3.2-5 for meanings of values in this field. The TMC field is only valid when the ETC bit is one.

**Table 5.1.3.2-5. Threshold Met Criteria**

<b>Code</b>	<b>Basis for Comparison</b>
00b	Notify of every update of cumulative value
01b*	Cumulative value equal to threshold value
10b*	Cumulative value not equal threshold value
11b*	Cumulative value greater than threshold value

\*Comparison made at every update of cumulative value.

If the ETC bit is one\* and the result of the comparison is true, a unit attention condition is generated for all initiators. When reporting the unit attention condition the drive sets the sense key to Unit Attention, and the additional sense code to Threshold Condition Met.

\*The RLEC bit (Report Log Exception Condition) in Mode page 0AH (Table 5.2.1-28) must also be one.

- [7] **List Parameter (LP).** Zero indicates the parameter is a data counter. One indicates that the parameter is a list parameter. This bit only has meaning for the Log Sense command data-in pages.

Data counters are associated with one or more events. The data counter is updated whenever one of these events occurs by incrementing the counter value, provided the DU bit is zero. See Note 2 above.

An LP bit of one indicates that the parameter is a list parameter. List parameters are not counters and thus the ETC and TMC fields shall be set to zero. A list parameter is a string of ASCII graphic codes (i.e., code values 20h thru 73h). List parameters are not supported by the drive at this time.

*continued from previous page*

- [8] **Parameter Length.** This field specifies the length in bytes of the parameter that follows. If the initiator sends a parameter length value that results in the truncation of the parameter value, the drive terminates the command with a Check Condition status. The sense key shall be set to Illegal Request with the additional sense code set to Invalid Field In Parameter List.
- [9] **Parameter value.** This field uses one, two, four or eight bytes to transmit an unsigned counter value. The initiator sends counts to set values into counters in the drive, and the drive returns counter values to the initiator. The initiator is responsible to issue a Log Sense command to learn the parameter length the target has selected.

When any counter in a log page reaches its maximum value, the drive ceases incrementing all counters in that log page. If the RLEC bit of the Control Mode page is one, then the drive reports the exception condition as described in note [2] above.

The page code assignments for the log pages are listed in Table 5.1.3.2-6. Detailed descriptions follow the table.

**Table 5.1.3.2-6. Log Page Codes**

Page Code	Description	Section
02h	Error Counter Page (Write)	5.1.3.2.1
03h	Error Counter Page (Read)	5.1.3.2.2
05h	Error Counter Page (Verify)	5.1.3.2.3
06h	Non-Medium Error page	5.1.3.2.4
37h	Cache Statistics page	5.1.3.2.5

#### 5.1.3.2.1 Write, Read and Verify Error Counter pages (code 02, 03, 05h)

Table 5.1.3.2-7 defines the parameter code field for the write, read and verify error counter pages.

**Table 5.1.3.2-7. Write, Read and Verify Errors Parameter Code Field**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	Parameter Code [1]							

**Notes.**

- [1] Parameter codes 00h through 06h specify six counters each for write, read and verify errors (18 counters). A description of the type (category of error) counters specified by codes 00h through 06h are described following.

Parameter Code 00h - Error Corrected Without Substantial Delay. An error correction was applied to get perfect data (a.k.a. ECC on-the fly). 'Without Substantial Delay' means the correction did not postpone reading of later sectors (e.g., a revolution was not lost). The counter is incremented once for each logical block that requires correction. Two different blocks corrected during the same command are counted as two events.

Parameter Code 01h - Error Corrected with Possible Delays. An error code or algorithm (e.g., ECC, checksum) is applied in order to get perfect data with substantial delay. "With possible delay" means the correction took longer than a sector time so that reading/writing of subsequent sectors was delayed (e.g, a lost revolution). The counter is incremented once for each logical block that requires correction. A block with a double error that is correctable counts as one event and two different blocks corrected during the same command count as two events.

Parameter Code 02h - Total (e.g., re-writes or re-reads) This parameter code specifies the counter counting the number of errors that are corrected by applying retries. This counts errors recovered, not the number of retries. If five retries were required to recover one block of data, the counter increments by one, not five. The counter is incremented once for each logical block that is recovered using retries. If an error is not recoverable while applying retries and is recovered by ECC, it isn't counted by this counter; it will be counted by the counter specified by parameter code 01h - Error Corrected with Possible Delay.

Parameter Code 03h - Total Errors Corrected. This counter counts the total of all correctable errors encountered. It is the sum of the counters specified by parameter codes 01h and 02h. There is be no "double counting" of data errors among these two counters and all correctable data errors are counted in one of these counters.

Parameter Code 04h - Total Times Correction Algorithm Processed. This parameter code specifies the counter that counts the total number of retries, or "times the retry algorithm, is invoked". If after five attempts a counter 02h type error is recovered, then five is added to this counter. If three retries are required to get a stable ECC syndrome before a counter 01h type error is corrected, then those three retries are also counted here. The number of retries applied to unsuccessfully recover an error (counter 06h type error) are also counted by this counter.

Parameter Code 05h - Total Bytes Processed. This parameter code specifies the counter that counts the total number of bytes either successfully or unsuccessfully read, written or verified (depending on the log page) from the disc drive. If a transfer terminates early because of an unrecoverable error, only the logical blocks up to and including the one with the unrecoverable error are counted. Data bytes transferred to the initiator during a Mode Select, Mode Sense, Inquiry, Write Data Buffer, etc. do not count; only user data bytes are counted by this counter.

Parameter Code 06h - Total Uncorrected Errors. This parameter code specifies the counter that contains the total number of blocks for which an unrecoverable data error has occurred.

### 5.1.3.2.2 Non-Medium Error Page (code 06h)

Log page code 06h specifies non-medium errors. The page format is shown in Table 5.1.3.2-8.

Table 5.1.3.2-8. Non-Medium Error Page (Code 06h)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	Parameter Code [1]							

#### Notes.

[1] Parameter code 00h is the only code supported for this page and it represents the number of recoverable error events other than write, read or verify errors.

### 5.1.3.2.3 Cache Statistics Page (Page code 37h)

Log Page code 37h specifies Cache Statistics page. The page format is shown in Table 5.1.3.2-9.

Table 5.1.3.2-9. Cache Statistics Page

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	Parameter Code [1]—[5]							

#### Notes.

[1] Parameter Code 00h.

This parameter code represents the number of logical blocks that have been sent to an initiator.

[2] Parameter Code 01h.

This parameter code represents the number of logical blocks that have been received from an initiator.

[3] Parameter Code 02h.

This parameter code represents the number of logical blocks read from the cache memory that have been sent to an initiator.

[4] Parameter Code 03h.

This parameter code represents the number of read and write commands that had data lengths equal or less than the current segment size.

[5] Parameter Code 04h.

This parameter code represents the number of read and write commands that had data lengths greater than the current segment size.



### 5.1.3.3 Log Sense Command (4Dh)[1]

The Log Sense command provides a means for an initiator to retrieve statistical information maintained by the drive about the drive operation. It is a complementary command to the Log Select Command. This information is stored in logs (counters) in the drive and is sent to the initiator in the data-in phase of the Log Sense command. The Log Sense command format that the initiator sends is shown in Figure 5.1.3.3-1. The format of the data pages sent back by the drive in the data-in phase is shown in Figure 5.1.3.3-2.

Table 5.1.3.3-1. The Log Sense Command (4Dh)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (4Dh)							
1	0	0	0	Reserved			PPC [1]	SP [2]
2	PC [3]		Page Code [4]					
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	(MSB)			Parameter Pointer [5]				(LSB)
6								
7	(MSB)			Allocation Length [6]				(LSB)
8								
9	10	0	0	0	0	0	Flag [7]	Link [7]

[1] Not supported by Standard OEM drives, but is a factory installed option.

#### Notes.

[1] Parameter Pointer Control (PPC). A PPC bit of one indicates that the drive shall return a log page with only those log parameters that have changed since the last Log Select or Log Sense command. The drive returns log parameter codes following (in ascending numerical order) the parameter code specified in the Parameter Pointer (bytes 5 & 6—see note [5]).

A PPC bit of zero indicates that all of the log parameter data requested from the drive, whether changed or not, is sent and it begins with the log specified by the parameter code given in the Parameter Pointer field and returns the number of bytes specified by the allocation length field, in ascending order of parameter codes starting at the parameter code given in the Parameter Pointer field. A PPC bit of zero and a Parameter Pointer field of zero causes all available log parameters for the specified log page to be returned to the initiator subject to the allocation length.

[2] Save Parameters bit (SP). If SP bit is zero the drive performs the specified Log Sense command and does not save any log parameters to non-volatile memory. If SP bit is one the drive first saves parameters identified as savable (by the DS bit in Table 5.1.3.2-4) to a nonvolatile location, and then performs the rest of the Log Sense command.

[3] Page Control (PC). This field defines the type of drive log parameter the initiator requests the drive to send back on the data-in phase. See Table 5.1.3.2-2 for definition of this field. The parameter values returned on the data-in phase are from one of the following:

continued from previous page

- (1) The specified parameter values in the log counters as of the last update (updated by Log Select command, Log Sense command or done automatically by the drive for cumulative values).
  - (2) The saved values if an update has not occurred since last power-on, hard reset condition, or Bus Device Reset message (assumes saved values are available).
  - (3) If saved values are not available, the default values are sent if an update has not occurred since the last power-on, hard reset condition, or Bus Reset message.
- [4] Page code field. The page code field specifies the page of data requested by the command (see Table 5.1.3.2-6). If a page code is sent that is not implemented, the drive terminates the command with Check Condition status. The sense key is set to Illegal Request with the additional sense code set to Invalid Field In CDB.

Table 5.1.3.3-2. (PAGE CODE 00h) returns the list of log pages that the drive supports.

Table 5.1.3.3-2. Supported Log Pages

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	Reserved		Page Code (00h)						
1	Reserved								
2	(MSB)	Page Length (n-3) [1]							
3							(LSB)		
4 : n	Supported Page List [2]								

This page is not defined for the LOG SELECT command.

- Notes.** [1] The page length field specifies the length in bytes of the following supported page list.  
 [2] The supported page list field shall contain a list of all log page codes implemented by the target in ascending order beginning with page code 00h.

- [5] Parameter Pointer. This field contains a Parameter Code that specifies that log parameter data be returned to the initiator by the data-in phase starting with the Parameter Pointer code log parameter data and continuing to the maximum allocation length or to (an including) log parameter data of the maximum parameter code supported by the drive, whichever is less. If the value of the Parameter Pointer field is larger than the largest available parameter code that can be returned by the drive on the specified page, the drive terminates the command with a Check Condition status. The sense key is set to Illegal Request and the additional sense code is set to Invalid Field In CDB.
- [6] Allocation Length. This field informs the drive of the amount of space available for returning log parameter data. If the allocation length is too small, the drive sends as much data as can fit in the allocation length without truncating a log parameter. The initiator can retrieve the rest of the log page information by setting the parameter pointer to the last returned parameter code and reissuing the log sense command. This process may be repeated as necessary to retrieve all the available information.
- [7] Flag and Link bits are used as previously defined in paragraph 4.2.6.

**5.1.3.4 Other Group 2 Commands** (Operation Codes 41h through 4Bh and 4Eh through 5Fh)

No other group 2 commands are implemented by the disc drive. A "Check Condition" status is sent if received.

**5.1.4 Groups 3 through 5 Commands for All Device Types** (Operation Codes 60h through BFh)

Not implemented. A "Check Condition" status is sent if received.

**5.1.5 Group 6 Commands for all device types** (Operation Codes C0h through DFh)

Reserved for Seagate usage. Customers should not attempt to use these functions. If these functions are used, the users stored data may be destroyed.

**5.1.6 Group 7 Commands for all device types** (Operation Codes E0h through FFh)

Same as Group 6 Commands.

**5.2 Command descriptions for direct access devices**

The disc drive supports Group 0, and Group 1 commands for Direct Access Devices. Refer to sections listed below for more details on these commands.

**5.2.1 Group 0 Commands for Direct Access Devices**

The Group 0 Commands for direct access devices implemented by disc drive are listed in Table 5.2.1-1, together with group 0 commands implemented for all devices.

**Table 5.2.1-1. Group 0 Commands Implemented**

<b>Operation Code (HEX)</b>	<b>Command Name</b>	<b>Section</b>
00	TEST UNIT READY (All devices)	5.1.1.1
01	REZERO UNIT	5.2.1.1
03	REQUEST SENSE (All devices)	5.1.1.2
04	FORMAT UNIT	5.2.1.2
07	REASSIGN BLOCKS	5.2.1.3
08	READ	5.2.1.4
0A	WRITE	5.2.1.5
0B	SEEK	5.2.1.6
12	INQUIRY (All devices)	5.1.1.3
15	MODE SELECT	5.2.1.7
16	RESERVE	5.2.1.8
17	RELEASE	5.2.1.9
1A	MODE SENSE	5.2.1.10
1B	START/STOP UNIT	5.2.1.11
1C	RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (All devices)	5.1.1.5
1D	SEND DIAGNOSTIC (All devices)	5.1.1.6

## 5.2.1.1 Rezero Unit Command (01h)

Table 5.2.1-2. Rezero Unit command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	Logical Unit No. 0 0 0 [1]			0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [2]

The Rezero Unit command (Table 5.2.1-2) requests that the disc drive set its logical block address to zero and return the disc drive read/write heads to the track (or cylinder) containing Logical Block Zero. This command is intended for systems which disable retries and the initiator performs error recovery. It is longer than a seek to Logical Block Address zero and should be utilized if seek errors are encountered.

For systems that support disconnection, the disc drive disconnects when this command is received.

A Rezero Command also causes a thermal compensation to occur and resets the thermal compensation cycle timer back to its start, thus allowing the host to know when to expect the next thermal compensation to occur. The host can thus prevent critical data transfer operations from being interrupted at an undesirable time.

**Notes.**

[1] The LUN must be zero.

[2] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

## 5.2.1.2 Format Unit Command (04h)

Table 5.2.1-3. Format Unit Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
1	Logical Unit No. [2] 0 0 0			FMT [2] DATA	CMP [2] LST	Defect List Format [2]		
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3 4	INTERLEAVE [3]							
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [4]

---

The Format Unit command (Table 5.2.1-3) ensures that the medium is formatted so all of the user addressable data blocks can be accessed. There is no guarantee that the medium has or has not been altered. In addition, the medium may be certified and control structures may be created for the management of the medium and defects.

For systems which support disconnection, the disc drive disconnects while executing the Format Unit command.

This command is implemented in the drive for mandatory features and a subset of the available optional features of the ANSI SCSI-2 specification as defined in the following paragraphs.

The drive allows an initiator to specify (or not specify) sectors which are to be reallocated during the format process. The format parameters to be specified in the Format Unit command are defined in Table 5.2.1-4.

The FORMAT UNIT command shall be rejected with RESERVATION CONFLICT status if the logical unit is reserved, or any extent reservation, from any initiator, is active in the specified logical unit.

During the format operation, the target shall respond to commands as follows:

1. In response to all commands except REQUEST SENSE and INQUIRY, the target shall return CHECK CONDITION status unless a reservation conflict exists in which case RESERVATION CONFLICT status shall be returned.
2. In response to the INQUIRY command, the target shall respond as commanded.
3. In response to the REQUEST SENSE command, unless an error has occurred, the target shall return a sense key of NOT READY and an additional sense code of LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY FORMAT IN PROGRESS. Refer to section 11.4 of individual drive model Vol. 1 Product manual to see if the drive supports format progress indication, or deferred error handling in case of an error occurrence during formatting.

**Notes.**

- [1] The LUN must be zero.
- [2] A Format Data (FmtData) bit of one indicates that the Format Unit Parameter list (Table 5.2.1-5a) is supplied during the Data Out phase. The Data Out phase consists of a defect list header (Table 5.2.1-5b), followed by an initialization pattern descriptor (Table 5.2.1-6a) (if any) followed by the defect descriptors. The format of the defect descriptor list is determined by the Defect List Format field. A FmtData bit of zero indicates the Data Out phase shall not occur (no defect data shall be supplied by the initiator).

A Complete List (CmpLst) bit of one indicates the data supplied is to be the complete list of Growth defects. Any previous Growth or Certification defect data shall be erased. The disc drive may add to this list as it formats the medium. The result is to purge any previous Growth or Certification defect list and to build a new defect list. A CmpLst bit of zero indicates the data supplied is in addition to the existing Growth defect list.

The use of the P and C defect lists is controlled by byte 1 of the defect list header (see Table 5.2.1-5b).

The Defect List Format field specifies additional information related to the defect list. (See Table 5.2.1-4 for further information.)

- [3] The Interleave field requests that logical blocks be related in a specific fashion to the physical blocks to facilitate data transfer speed matching. An interleave value of zero requests that the target use its default interleave. An interleave value of one requests that consecutive logical blocks be placed in consecutive physical order. Values of two or greater indicate that one or more (respectively) physical blocks separate consecutive logical blocks. The disc drive implements an optional prefetch ("read look ahead") function which reads a user-specified number of sectors into its buffer beyond and contiguous to the sectors requested by the read command. This data is subsequently available for the next sequential read command without re-access of the disc media thereby increasing performance and negating the need for an interleave during format if this prefetch option is enabled. (See Read Command, Section 5.2.1.4.) Interleave values other than zero or one are vendor specific.

- [4] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

The following definitions of flaw categories are supplied to help in understanding the alternatives listed in Table 5.2.1-4.

**P = Primary Defect Type:** P type flawed sectors are identified at the time of shipment in a list of defects (permanent flaws) supplied by Seagate and stored on the disc in an area that is not directly accessible by the user. (This list may be referred to as an ETF List). This defect list is not modified or changed by the disc drive (or initiator) after shipment.

**C = Certification Defect Type:** C type flawed sectors are sectors that fail a format verify during the format function.

**D = Data Defect Type:** D type sectors are sectors identified in a list supplied to the target by the initiator during a Data Out phase of the current Format Unit command. The D List follows a four byte defect list header and is referred to as Defect Descriptor Bytes.

**G = Growth Defect Type:** G type flawed sectors contain medium flaws and have been reallocated as a result of receiving a Reassign Blocks command, or certification defects (C type) reallocated during a previous Format Unit command, or Data Defects (D type) reallocated during a previous Format Unit command or defects that have been automatically reallocated by the drive. This (G) list is recorded on the disc drive media and may be referenced for the current (and subsequent) Format Unit commands. This (G) list does not include the Primary (P) list of defects.

Table 5.2.1-4. Format Unit Parameter Definition (Format Variations)

CDB-Byte [1] Bits					COMMENTS
4	3	2	1	0	
FMT DATA	CMP LIST	DEFECT LIST FORMAT			
0	X	X	X	X	Default Format: No Data Out phase occurs. disc drive reallocates all sectors in the P list plus any sector which fails the Format Verify phase (C type flaws). Any previous G list is erased.
<b>Block format</b>					
1	0	0	X	X	(Not supported by Seagate drives) Format with G and no D: A four byte Defect List Header must be sent by the initiator. No Defect Descriptors (D list) are sent by the initiator. The disc drive reallocates all sectors in the drives current G list. See also note [2].
1	1	0	X	X	(Not supported by Seagate drives) Format without G or D: A four byte Defect List Header must be sent by the initiator. No D list may be sent by the initiator. The disc drive erases any previous G list. See also note [2].
<b>Bytes from INDEX format</b>					
1	1	1	0	0	Format with D and without G. The initiator must send a four byte Defect List Header followed by a D list of the defects for the disc drive to reallocate. The D list must be in the bytes from Index format (see Table 5.2.1-6e). The disc drive erases any previous G list. See also Note [2].
1	0	1	0	0	Format with D and with G: The initiator must send a four byte Defect List Header followed by a D list of the defects for the disc drive to reallocate. The D list must be in the bytes from Index format (see Table 5.2.1-6e). The disc drive also reallocates all sectors in the drives current G list. See also note [2].
<b>Physical Sector format</b>					
1	1	1	0	1	Format with D and without G: The initiator must send a four byte Defect List Header followed by a D List of defects for the disc drive to reallocate. The D list must be in the Physical Sector format (see Table 5.2.1-6f). The disc drive erases any previous G list. See also note [2].
1	0	1	0	1	Format with D and with G: The initiator must send a four byte Defect List Header followed by a D List of defects for disc drive to reallocate. The D list must be in the Physical Sector format (see Table 5.2.1-6f). The disc drive also reallocates all sectors in the drives current G list. See also note [2].

[1] Refer to Table 5.2.1-3.

[2] Byte one of the Defect List Header determines whether the P and C defects are reallocated. See Table 5.2.1-5b.

The defect list shown in Table 5.2.1-5b contains a four byte header followed by one or more defect descriptors (Table 5.2.1-6d). The Defect List Length in each table specifies the total length in bytes of the defect descriptors that follow. In Table 5.2.1-5b the Defect List Length is equal to eight times the number of defect descriptors.

Table 5.2.1-5a. Format Unit Parameter List

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
*	DEFECT LIST HEADER				* (Table 5.2.1-5b)			
**	INITIALIZATION PATTERN DESCRIPTOR				** (Table 5.2.1-6a)			
***	DEFECT DESCRIPTOR(S)				*** (Tables 5.2.1-6d, 6e, 6f)			

Table 5.2.1-5b. Defect List Header

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	RESERVED							
1	FOV [1]	DPRY [2]	DCRT [3]	STPF [4]	IP [5]	DSP [6]	IMMED [7]	VS [8]
2	(MSB)				DEFECT LIST LENGTH [9]			
3								LSB)

### Notes.

#### Function Drive defect List Header Bit Interpretations

- [1] FOV If one, the disc drive interprets the DPRY, DCRT, IP and DSP bits. If zero, the disc drive checks the DPRY, DCRT, IP and DSP bits for zeros.
- [2] DPRY If one, flaws in the disc drive P list are not reallocated during formatting. This means existing reallocations of the P list are canceled and no new reallocations made during formatting. The P list is retained. Seagate drives do not support a DPRY bit of one, except for customer specials.
- If zero, flaws in the disc drive P list are reallocated during formatting. A Check Condition is sent in the status if the P list cannot be found by the disc drive.
- [3] DCRT If one, the disc drive does not perform a verify function during formatting (thus no C list for this format is created or reallocated).
- If zero, the disc drive performs a verify function during formatting and reallocates any sector that fails the verify (i.e.; a C list is created and these flaws reallocated).
- [4] STPF If one, formatting is terminated with a CHECK CONDITION STATUS if an error is encountered while accessing either the P or G defect list. The Sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR and the additional sense code shall be set to either DEFECT LIST NOT FOUND or DEFECT LIST ERROR.
- If zero, formatting is not terminated if an error is encountered while accessing either the P or G defect list.



continued from previous page

- [5] IP                                    An initialization pattern (IP) bit of one indicates that an initialization pattern descriptor is included in the FORMAT UNIT parameter list immediately following the defect list header. An IP bit of zero indicates that an initialization pattern descriptor is not included and that the target uses its default initialization pattern.

The initialization pattern type field indicates the type of pattern the target shall use to initialize each logical block within the initiator accessible portion of the medium (Table 5.2.1-6c). All bytes within a logical block shall be written with the initialization pattern. The initialization pattern is modified by the IP modifier field as described above in Table 5.2.1-6b.
- [6] DISABLE                            A disable saving parameters (DSP) bit of one, specifies that the target shall not  
SAVING                                    save the MODE SELECT savable parameters to non-volatile memory during the  
PARAMETERS                            format operation. A DSP bit of zero specifies that the target shall save all the MODE  
    SELECT savable parameters for all initiators to non-volatile memory during the format operation.
- [7] IMMEDIATE                        An immediate (IMMED) bit of zero indicates that status shall be returned after the  
    first operation has completed. An Immed bit value of one indicates that the target  
    shall return status as soon as the command descriptor block has been validated,  
    and the entire defect list has been transferred. Check individual drive Product manual  
    Vol. 1 section 11.4 for applicability of this feature.
- [8] VS                                    Vendor Specific. Not used.
- [9] DEFECT                              The length of any following D list (Defect Descriptors) must be equal to 8 times  
LIST                                        the number of sectors to be reallocated per Table 5.2.1-6e or Table 5.2.1-6f.  
LENGTH

**Note.** The initiator may not use any previously defined “C”, “G”, or “D” lists if the sector size (block length) has been changed.

The initialization pattern option specifies that the logical blocks contain the specified initialization pattern. The initialization pattern descriptor (Table 5.2.1-6a) is sent to the target as part of the FORMAT UNIT parameter list.

**Table 5.2.1-6a. Initialization Pattern Descriptor**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	IP MODIFIER		RESERVED					
1	PATTERN TYPE							
2	MSB		INITIALIZATION PATTERN LENGTH				LSB	
3								
0-n	INITIALIZATION PATTERN							

Table 5.2.1-6b. Initialization Pattern Modifier

IP	Modifier	Description
0	0	No header. The target shall not modify the initialization pattern.
0	1	The target shall overwrite the initialization pattern to write the logical block address in the first four bytes of the logical block. The logical block address shall be written with the most significant byte first.
1	0	The target shall overwrite the initialization pattern to write the logical block address in the first four bytes of each physical block contained within the logical block. The lowest numbered logical block or part thereof that occurs within the physical block is used. The logical block address shall be written with the most significant byte first.
1	1	Reserved.

This table gives pattern type information required in byte 1 of Table 5.2.1-6a.

Table 5.2.1-6c. Initialization Pattern Type

Pattern Type	Note	Description
00h	(1)	Use default pattern
01h	(2)	Repeat the initialization pattern as required to fill the logical block
02-7Fh	None	Reserved
80-FFh	None	Vendor-specific

#### Notes.

- (1) If the initialization pattern length is not zero the target shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.
- (2) If the initialization pattern length is zero the target shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

The initialization pattern length field indicates the number of bytes contained in the initialization pattern. If the length exceeds the current logical block size the target shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST. The pattern is modified by the IP modifier field.

#### Defect List Formats

Table 5.2.1-6d. Defect Descriptors

0-n	DEFECT DESCRIPTORS BYTES (Refer to Table 5.2.1-6e, Table 5.2.1-6f for Format)
-----	--

This section describes the format of the defect list that follows the Defect List Header described in Table 5.2.1-5b. Three formats are possible: the block format, the bytes from index format and the physical sector format. Seagate drives do not support the block format, except as a customer special. The other two formats that are supported are described in Tables 5.2.1-6e and 5.2.1-6f.

Table 5.2.1-6e. Defect Descriptor Bytes - Bytes from Index Format

Byte Number	Description
0	Cylinder Number of Defect (MSB)
1	Cylinder Number of Defect
2	Cylinder Number of Defect (LSB)
3	Head Number of Def
4	Defect Bytes from Index (MSB)
5	Defect Bytes from Index
6	Defect Bytes from Index
7	Defect Bytes from Index (LSB)

For defects to be specified in the Bytes from Index format, the defect list format field (Byte 1, bits 2, 1, 0) must be 100 (binary), see Tables 5.2.1-3 and 5.2.1-4.

Each Defect Descriptor for the Bytes from Index format specifies the beginning of an eight bit (1 byte) defect location on the medium. Each defect descriptor is comprised of the cylinder number of the defect, the head number of the defect and the number of bytes from Index to the defect location. (Defect bytes from Index)

The Defect Descriptors shall be in ascending order. The drive may return CHECK CONDITION if the defect descriptors are not in ascending order. For determining ascending order, the Cylinder Number of Defect is considered the most significant part of the address and the Defect Bytes from Index is considered the least significant part of the address.

A value for Defect Bytes from Index of FFFFFFFFh (i.e., reassign the entire track) is illegal for the disc drive.

Table 5.2.1-6f. Defect Descriptor Bytes - Physical Sector Format

Byte Numbers	Description
0	Cylinder Number of Defect (MSB)
1	Cylinder Number of Defect
2	Cylinder Number of Defect (LSB)
3	Head Number of Defect
4	Defect Sector Number (MSB)
5	Defect Sector Number
6	Defect Sector Number
7	Defect Sector Number (LSB)

Information in this Table is repeated for each defect.

For defects to be specified in the Physical Sector format, the Defect List format field (Byte 1, bits 2, 1, 0) must be 101 (binary). See Tables 5.2.1-3 and 5.2.1-4.

Each Defect Descriptor for the Physical Sector format specifies a sector size defect location comprised of the cylinder number of the defect, the head number of the defect and the defect sector number.

The Defect Descriptors shall be in ascending order. The drive may return CHECK CONDITION if the defect descriptors are not in ascending order. For determining ascending order, the Cylinder Number of the defect is considered the most significant part of the address and the Defect Sector Number is considered the least significant part of the address.

A Defect Sector Number of FFFFFFFFh (i.e., reassign the entire track) is illegal for the disc drive.

### 5.2.1.3 Reassign Blocks Command (07h)

Table 5.2.1-7. Reassign Blocks Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [2]

#### Notes.

[1] The LUN must be zero.

[2] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

The Reassign Blocks command (Table 5.2.1-7) requests the target to reassign the defective logical blocks to an area on the logical unit reserved for this purpose.

After sending the Reassign Blocks command, the initiator transfers a defect list that contains the logical block addresses to be reassigned. The disc drive reassigns the physical medium used for each logical block address in the list. The data contained in the logical blocks specified in the defect list is not preserved, but the data in all other logical blocks on the medium is preserved. It is recommended that the initiator recover the data from the logical blocks to be reassigned before issuing this command. After completion of this command, the initiator can write the recovered data to the same Logical Block Addresses.

The effect of specifying a logical block to be reassigned that has previously been reassigned is to reassign the block again. Thus, over the life of the medium, a logical block can be assigned to multiple physical addresses (until no more spare locations remain on the medium).

This command should be used by an initiator to immediately reallocate any block (sector) which requires the disc drive to recover data by data correction via ECC if the automatic reallocation feature of the disc drive is not enabled, see Mode Select command (Section 5.2.1.7).

For systems which support disconnection, the disc drive disconnects while executing this command.

The Reassign Blocks defect list (Table 5.2.1-8) contains a four byte header followed by one or more Defect Descriptors. The length of each Defect Descriptor is four bytes.

Table 5.2.1-8. Reassign Blocks Defect List

Defect List Header								
Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	Defect List Length (MSB)						[1]	
3	Defect List Length (LSB)							
Defect Descriptor(s)								
0	Defect Logical Block Address (MSB)						[2]	
1	Defect Logical Block Address							
2	Defect Logical Block Address							
3	Defect Logical Block Address (LSB)							

**Notes.**

[1] The Defect List Length specifies the total length in bytes of the Defect Descriptors that follow. The Defect List Length is equal to four times the number of Defect Descriptors.

[2] The Defect Descriptor specifies a four byte Defect Logical Block Address that contains the defect. The Defect Descriptors shall be in ascending order.

If the logical unit has insufficient capacity to reassign all of the defective logical blocks, the command shall terminate with a Check Condition status and the Sense Key shall be set to HARDWARE ERROR and the additional sense code set to NO DEFECT SPARE LOCATION AVAILABLE. The logical block address of the first logical block not reassigned shall be returned in the information bytes of the sense data. If information about the first defect descriptor not reassigned is not available, or if all the defects have been reassigned, this field shall be set to FFFFFFFFh.

If the REASSIGN BLOCKS command failed due to an unexpected unrecoverable read error that would cause the loss of data in a block not specified in the defect list, the logical block address of the unrecoverable block shall be returned in the information field of the sense data and the valid bit shall be set to one.

**IMPLEMENTORS NOTE:** If the REASSIGN BLOCKS command returns CHECK CONDITION status and the sense data command-specific information field contains a valid logical block address, the initiator should remove all defect descriptors from the defect list prior to the one returned in the command-specific information field. If the sense key is MEDIUM ERROR and the valid bit is one (the information field contains the valid block address) the initiator should insert that new defective logical block address into the defect list and reissue the REASSIGN BLOCKS command with the new defect list. Otherwise, the initiator should perform any corrective action indicated by the sense data and then reissue the REASSIGN BLOCKS command with the new defect list.

## 5.2.1.4 Read Command (08h)

Table 5.2.1-9. Read Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0		0	Logical Block Address (MSB) [2]				
2	Logical Block Address							
3	Logical Block Address (LSB)							
4	Transfer Length						[3]	
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [4]

The Read Command (Table 5.2.1-9) requests that the disc drive transfer data to the initiator.

**Notes.**

[1] In the CDB the LUN must be zero.

[2] The Logical Block Address specifies that logical block at which the read operation shall begin.

[3] The Transfer Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data to be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that 256 logical blocks shall be transferred. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be transferred.

[4] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

The data value most recently written in the addressed logical block shall be returned.

Read data transfers with the initiator do not begin until at least one full sector of data is available in the disc drive data buffer. For multiple sector reads, the transfer of data continues until the number of blocks specified in byte 4 of the CDB has been read and transferred or until an unrecoverable error is detected.

Data transfer could stop if the option to stop on recovered error is selected.

For systems that support disconnection, the disc drive disconnects when a valid Read command is received. The disc drive reconnects depending on the value of the Buffer Full Ratio Set in Page 2 of the Mode Select Data (see Section 5.2.1.7). After data transfer has been initiated with an initiator, the disc drive does not disconnect unless an internal error recovery procedure is required or the data transfer to an initiator is interrupted for more than 1 millisecond.

The initiator must accept all data presented to the initiator after sending this command until the disc drive sends Completion Status during a Status phase. (Note the disc drive may disconnect and reconnect while executing this command and the initiator may prematurely terminate this command by creating the Reset condition or by sending an Abort, Abort Tag, Clear Queue or Bus Device Reset message).

Sense Data is valid after this command is executed and Completion Status is sent. If the Address Valid bit in the Sense Data is true (1), the Sense Data Logical Block Address (Information bytes) points to the last Logical Block accessed by the disc drive. If the Address Valid bit in the Sense Data is false (0), the Sense Data Logical Block Address bytes are not valid.

The disc drive contains a large buffer and implements an optional "prefetch" and segmented cache function whereby the requested read data is read into the buffer, plus an additional amount, depending on the cache control parameters. See paragraph "Prefetch and multisegmented cache control" in the individual Product Manual for more information on this.

This command is terminated with a Reservation Conflict status and no data is read if any reservation access conflict (see Section 5.2.1.8) exists.

If any of the following conditions occur, this command shall be terminated with a Check Condition status, and if extended sense is implemented, the Sense Key shall be set as indicated in the following table. This table does not provide an exhaustive enumeration of all conditions that may cause the Check Condition status.

<b>Condition</b>	<b>Sense Key</b>
Invalid Logical Block Address	Illegal Request (see note)
Target reset since last command from this initiator	Unit Attention
Unrecoverable read error	Medium Error
Recovered read error	Recovered Error
Overrun or other error that might be resolved by repeating the command	Aborted Command

**Note.** The extended sense Information Bytes shall be set to the Logical Block Address of the first invalid address.

## 5.2.1.5 Write Command (0Ah)

Table 5.2.1-10. Write Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
1	Logical Unit No. [1] 0 0		Logical Block Address (MSB) [2]					
2	Logical Block Address							
3	Logical Block Address (LSB)							
4	Transfer Length						[3]	
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [4]

The Write command (Table 5.2.1-10) requests that the disc drive write, to the medium, the data transferred by the initiator.

**Notes.**

[1] The LUN must be zero.

[2] The Logical Block Address specifies the logical block at which the write operation shall begin.

[3] The Transfer Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data to be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that 256 logical blocks shall be transferred. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be transferred.

[4] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

For systems that support disconnection, the disc drive disconnects when any internal error recovery procedure is required, or the data transfer with the initiator is interrupted for more than 1 millisecond, or if the disc drive's internal data buffer is full. After a disconnect the disc drive reconnects depending on the value of the Buffer Empty Ratio in Page 2 of Mode Select Data (see Section 5.2.1.7).

The initiator must send requested write data to the drive until the drive sends Completion status during a Status phase or until the initiator Resets/Aborts the command or clears the queue. (Note: the drive may disconnect and reconnect while executing this command).

Sense Data is valid after this command is executed and Completion status is sent. (refer to the Read Command description in Section 5.2.1.4).

If the RCD bit is set to zero on the Caching Mode page 08h (cache is enabled), the data that is written by this command remains in the cache buffer, if no write errors are encountered. This allows a Read command to access the same data from the cache buffer instead of accessing the media, if the same LBA is requested by the Read command.

This command is terminated with a Reservation Conflict status and no data is written if any reservation access conflict (see Section 5.2.1.8) exists.



If any of the following conditions occur, this command is terminated with a Check Condition status, and if extended sense is implemented, the Sense Key is set as indicated in the following table. This table does not provide an exhaustive enumeration of all conditions that may cause the Check Condition status.

Condition	Sense Key
Invalid Logical Block Address	Illegal Request (see note)
Target reset since last command from this initiator	Unit Attention
Overrun or other error that might be resolved by repeating the command	Aborted Command

**Note.** The extended sense Information Bytes shall be set to the Logical Block Address of the first invalid address.

**5.2.1.6 Seek Command (0Bh)**

**Table 5.2.1-11. Seek Command**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			Logical Block Address (MSB) [2]				
2	Logical Block Address							
3	Logical Block Address (LSB)							
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [3]

The Seek command (Table 5.2.1-11) requests that the disc drive seek to the specified logical block address.

For systems which support disconnection, the disc drive disconnects when a valid Seek command is received. The use of this command is infrequent since all commands involving data transfer to/from the disc drive media contain implied seek addresses.

**Notes.**

[1] The Logical Unit number should be zero.

[2] The maximum Logical Block Address that may be specified for a Seek command is defined in Read Capacity Data, Section 5.2.2.1.

[3] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

## 5.2.1.7 Mode Select (6) Command (15h)

Table 5.2.1-12. Mode Select Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	i	0	i	0	i
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			PF [2]	0	0	0	SMP [3]
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	Parameter List Length							[4]
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [5]

The Mode Select command (Table 5.2.1-12) provides a means for the initiator to specify medium, logical unit, or peripheral device parameters to the disc drive. The drive also implements the Mode Sense command (See 5.2.1.10). Initiators should issue Mode Sense prior to Mode Select to determine supported pages, page lengths, and other parameters.

The drive maintains a separate set of mode parameters for each initiator that could be on the SCSI bus (7 or 15), regardless of whether or not more than one initiator actually exists on the bus. If an initiator sends a Mode Select command that changes any parameters that apply to other initiators, the drive generates a Unit Attention condition for all initiators except the one that issued the Mode Select command. The drive sets the additional sense code to Mode Parameters Changed.

If the initiator sends a value for a changeable parameter that is outside the range supported by the target and rounding is implemented for that parameter, the target either:

- (1) rounds the parameter to an acceptable value and if Round is one, terminates the command as described in 4.8. See note [4] of Table 5.2.1-31.
- (2) rounds the parameter to an acceptable value and if Round equals zero, terminates the command as if an acceptable value had been sent from the initiator.

A target may alter any mode parameter in any mode page (even parameters reported as non-changeable) as a result of changes to other mode parameters.

**Notes.**

[1] LUN must be zero

[2] The Page Format (PF) bit, when set to one, indicates the data sent by the initiator after the mode select Header and Block Descriptors (if any) complies with the Page Format. The PF bit, when set to zero, indicates the data sent after the Mode Select Header and the Block Descriptors (if any) are vendor unique. The disc drive does not interpret the PF bit. It assumes the Page Format mode.

*continued from previous page*

- [3] The Save Mode Parameters (SMP) bit, when set to one, requests that the disc drive save the savable pages. The format related parameters in the block descriptor, pages 3 and 4 are saved during a Format command as well as a Mode Select command with SMP = 1. The disc drive must update the Current mode values with parameters included with this command, save the Current values of the savable parameters, and report Good status only after the save operation is completed. The Saved parameters are not changed if an error is detected during the Mode Select command. When the SMP bit is set to zero, the Saved parameter values are not changed.
- [4] The Parameter List Length specifies the length in bytes of the Mode Select parameter list that shall be transferred during the Data Out phase. A Parameter List Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error.
- [5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

The Mode Select parameter list (Table 5.2.1-13) contains a four byte header, followed by zero or one block descriptor, followed by the pages of Mode Select Parameters.

Acceptable values for the Mode Select parameter list for the disc drive are shown in Table 5.2.1-13.

The target terminates all the Mode Select commands with Check Condition status, sets the sense key to ILLEGAL REQUEST and sets the additional sense code to Invalid Field In Parameter List, *and does not change any mode parameters* for the following conditions:

1. If the *Strict mode is enabled* (see note [5] of Table 5.2.1-31) and the initiator attempts to change any field that is not changeable by the host as reported by the target. In this case, no parameters are changed by this command. *The target compares the parameters against the values as they were prior to this Mode Select command. (The host shall not be penalized by values, not changeable by the host, which have a target "ripple change" as a result of this Mode Select).*
2. If the initiator attempts to send an unsupported value or, a non-zero value to a reserved field in the Mode Select header, block descriptor, or any page header.
3. If an initiator attempts to send a page with a length not equal to the parameter length reported for that page by the Mode Sense command.
4. If the initiator attempts to send a value for a *changeable* parameter that is outside the range supported by the target and rounding is not implemented for that parameter (see note [4], Table 5.2.1-31).
5. If the initiator sends a page descriptor with an unsupported page code value and the Strict mode is enabled. See note [5] of Table 5.2.1-31.

If the initiator sends a value for a *changeable* parameter that is outside the range supported by the target and rounding is implemented for that parameter, the target shall either:

- (1) round the parameter to an acceptable value and if *Round is one*, terminate the command as described in 4.8.
- (2) round the parameter to an acceptable value and if *Round equals zero*, terminate the command as if an acceptable value had been sent from the initiator.

*A target may alter any mode parameter in any mode page (even parameters reported as non-changeable) as a result of changes to other mode parameters.*

Table 5.2.1-13. Mode Select Parameter List

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	RESERVED							
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	MEDIUM TYPE [1]							
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	RESERVED							
3	BLOCK DESCRIPTOR LENGTH EITHER 0 or 8 (DECIMAL) [2]							
<b>BLOCK DESCRIPTOR</b>								
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	DENSITY CODE [3]							
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	NUMBER OF BLOCKS (MSB) [4]							
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	NUMBER OF BLOCKS							
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	NUMBER OF BLOCKS (LSB)							
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	BLOCK LENGTH (MSB)							
5	BLOCK LENGTH (MSB)							
6	BLOCK LENGTH [5]							
7	BLOCK LENGTH (LSB)							
<b>PARAMETER INFORMATION</b> [6]								
8 - n	MODE SELECT PAGE HDRS AND THEIR PARAMETERS (Tables 5.2.1-14 and 5.2.1-15)							

**Notes.**

- [1] The medium type field shall be 00h to define the default type direct access device.
- [2] The Block Descriptor Length specifies the length in bytes of the Block Descriptor. It is equal to the number of bytes in the Block Descriptor (either 0 or 8) and does not include the page headers and mode parameters. A Block Descriptor Length of zero indicates that no block descriptors shall be included in the parameter list. This condition shall not be considered an error.
- [3] The Density Code shall be 00h to define the default density of medium.
- [4] The Number of Blocks field specifies the number of logical blocks on the medium that corresponds to the Density Code and Block Length in the Block Descriptor. For a disc drive, there is only one Block Descriptor, thus the Number of Blocks must be zero signifying that all logical blocks of the logical unit shall have the medium characteristics specified by the Block Descriptor.
- [5] Block Length specifies the length in number of bytes for each logical block described by the Block Descriptor. Set to desired sector size before a Format. (Valid values are even numbered sizes from 180 to 4096. Not all drives can format down to 180; some have a minimum of 256).
- [6] See Mode Sense Command, for detailed descriptions of the Mode Select/Sense pages.

The rest of the Mode Select parameters are organized into pages that group the parameters by function. The parameter definitions are the same as those described in the Mode Sense command (paragraph 5.2.1.10) and are not repeated here.

**Table 5.2.1-14. Mode Select Page Descriptor Header**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	PAGE CODE					
1	PAGE LENGTH							
2 - n	MODE PARAMETERS							

Each page of mode parameters begins with a two byte Page Descriptor Header. The Page Code identifies the page of mode parameters that is being transferred. The Page Length indicates the number of additional bytes of mode parameters contained in this page. The number of additional bytes sent must always match the Page Length value.

*The disc drive only verifies Mode Select Data that is defined as changeable by the drive.\* The various disc drives support the following Page Codes\*:*

**Table 5.2.1-15. Mode Sense Page Codes supported**

Page Code	Description
00h	Unit Attention Page parameters(should be sent last in a group of Mode pages)
01h	Error Recovery parameters
02h	Disconnect/Reconnect Control parameters
03h	Format parameters
04h	Rigid Disc Drive Geometry parameters
07h	Verify Error Recovery parameters
08h	Caching Parameters
0Ah	Control Mode Page
0C	Notch and Partition Page

The detailed information can be obtained by issuing the Mode Sense command requesting changeable values.

**Note.**

There may be implicit associations between parameters defined in the pages and block descriptors. The block length affects the optimum values (the values that achieve best performance) for the sectors per track, bytes per physical sector, track skew factor, and cylinder skew factor fields in the format parameters page. In this case, the drive may change parameters not explicitly sent with the Mode Select command. A subsequent Mode Sense command would provide information on these changes.

\*See individual drive Product Manuals (Volume 1), Section “SCSI Interface commands supported”, for a table showing the mode pages that a particular drive implements. The table shows the default parameters for pages that are implemented, and shows which Mode parameters are changeable by that drive model.

### 5.2.1.8 Reserve Command (16h)

The Reserve and Release commands provide the basic mechanism for contention resolution in multiple initiator systems. The third party reservation allows one initiator to reserve the drive for some other SCSI device that can act as an initiator. Table 5.2.1-16 shows the command structure.

Table 5.2.1-16. Reserve Command CDB

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0
1	Logical Unit No. [1]		0	3rd PRTY 0 or 1 [2]	3rd PRTY DEV.ID [2]			EXTENT [3]
2	RESERVATION IDENTIFICATIONS							
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 [4]
3	EXTENT LIST LENGTH (MSB)							
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 [3]
4	EXTENT LIST LENGTH (LSB)							
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 [3]
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [5]

#### Notes.

[1] The LUN must be zero.

[2] If bit 4 is zero, bits 3, 2, and 1 are zeros. If bit 4 is one, bits 3, 2, and 1 identify the SCSI bus ID of the device for which the drive is reserved.

[3] Must be zero if not supported. Check with drive Product Manual, "SCSI Interface commands supported".

[4] Reserve Identifications applies only if Extent is supported. This field must be zero if not supported. Check with drive Product Manual, section "SCSI Interface commands supported". (also see paragraph 5.2.1.8.1, 5.2.1.8.2).

[5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

#### 5.2.1.8.1 Logical Unit Reservation

If the Extent bit is zero, this command requests the entire disc drive be reserved for exclusive use of the initiator until the reservation is superseded by another valid Reserve command from the initiator that made the reservation, released by a Release command from the same initiator, by a Bus Device Reset message from any initiator, or by a "hard" Reset condition. A logical unit reservation is not granted if any extent or logical unit is reserved by another initiator or if any extent with a read shared reservation type is reserved by this initiator. It is permissible for an initiator to reserve a logical unit that is currently reserved by that initiator. If the Extent bit is zero, the Reservation Identification and the Extent List Length are ignored. If the Extent bit is a one and if the drive does not support the extent reservation option, the disc drive generates Check Condition status and sets the sense key to Illegal Request.

If, after honoring the reservation, any other initiator subsequently attempts to perform a command other than a Release command, which shall be ignored, or an Inquiry command, which shall be executed, or a Request Sense command, which shall be executed, the command is rejected with Reservation Conflict status.

#### **5.2.1.8.2 Extent Reservation**

The disc drive may not support Extent reservations, in which case this bit must always be zero. See the rive Product Manual section “SCSI Interface commands supported”. Since the Reservation Identification byte and the Extent List Length are valid only for extent reservations, the disc drive ignores these fields if extent reservations are not supported.

#### **5.2.1.8.3 Third Party Reservation**

The third party reservation option for the Reserve command allows an initiator to reserve a logical unit for another SCSI device. If the drive supports third party reserve command, the disc drive also implements the third party release option (see Section 5.2.1.9.3). This feature is intended for use in Multiple-initiator systems that use the Copy command. Check the Drive Product Manual to see if the disc drive supports the third party reservation option.

If the third party (3rdPty) bit is zero, the third party reservation option is not requested. If the 3rdPty bit is one the Reserve command reserves the specified logical unit for the SCSI device specified in the third party device ID field. The disc drive shall preserve the reservation until it is superseded by another valid Reserve command from the initiator which made the reservation or until it is released by the same initiator, by a Bus Device Reset message from any initiator, or a “hard” Reset condition. The disc drive shall ignore any attempt to release the reservation made by any other initiator.

#### **5.2.1.8.4 Superseding Reservations**

An initiator which holds a current reservation may modify that reservation by issuing another Reserve command to the same logical unit. The superseding Reserve command shall release the previous reservation state when the new reservation request is granted. The previous reservation shall not be modified if the new reservation request cannot be granted.

### 5.2.1.9 Release Command (17h)

The Release command (Table 5.2.1-17) is used to release previously reserved drives. It is not an error for an initiator to attempt to release a reservation that is not currently active. In this case, the drive returns Good status without altering any other reservation.

This command is implemented by the disc drive for an Entire Unit Release with Third Party Release supported and with the disc drive specific parameters listed in Table 5.2.1-17.

Table 5.2.1-17. Release Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1
1	Logical Unit No. 0 0 [1]		0	3rd Pty [2]	Third Party Dev. ID [2]		0	Extent [3]
2	Reservation Identification 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 [4]							
3	Reserved 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0							
4	Reserved 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0							
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [5]

#### Notes.

[1] In the CDB the LUN must be zero.

[2] Same as Note 2 for Reserve Command, Table 5.2.1-16.

[3] The Extent bit must be zero, if not supported by the drive. See drive Product Manual, section "SCSI Interface commands supported".

[4] Must be zero if not supported by the drive. See drive Product Manual, section "SCSI Interface commands supported". (see also paragraphs 5.2.1.8.1, 5.2.1.8.2).

[5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

#### 5.2.1.9.1 Logical Unit Release

If the extent bit is zero, the Release command shall cause the disc drive to terminate all reservations from the initiator to the disc drive.

#### 5.2.1.9.2 Extent Release

The disc drive may not support extent reservations, in which case this bit must always be zero. Since the Reservation Identification byte is valid only for extent reservations, the disc drive ignores this byte when it does not support extent release. Check the drive Product Manual section "SCSI Interface commands supported" for support of this command.



### 5.2.1.9.3 Third Party Release

The disc drive supports the third party release option. The third party release option for the Release command allows an initiator to release a logical unit which was previously reserved using the third party reservation option (see Section 5.2.1.8.3).

If the third party (3rdPty) bit is zero, the third party release option is not requested. If the 3rdPty bit is one, the disc drive shall release the specified logical unit, but only if the reservation was made using the third party reservation option by the initiator that is requesting the release, and for the same SCSI device specified in the third party ID field.

### 5.2.1.10 Mode Sense (6) Command (1Ah)

Table 5.2.1-18. Mode Sense Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0
1	Logical Unit No. [1] 0 0		0	0	DBD 0 [2]	0	0	0
2	PCF (See Table 5.2.1-19)[3]		Page Code					[4]
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	Allocation Length							[5]
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [6]

The Mode Sense command provides a means for the disc drive to report its medium, logical unit, or peripheral device parameters to the initiator. It is a command complementary to the Mode Select command.

#### Notes.

This command is implemented in the disc drive with the following drive specific parameters:

- [1] The LUN must be zero.
- [2] A DBD bit of zero indicates that the drive may return zero or more block descriptors in the returned Mode Sense data, at the drive's discretion. Seagate SCSI-2 products return one block descriptor if the DBD bit is zero. A DBD bit of one specifies that the drive shall not return any block descriptors in the returned Mode Sense data. Byte 3 of the mode sense header contains 00h to indicate a block descriptor length of zero.
- [3] The content of Mode Parameter bytes is determined by the value of the PCF (Page Control Field) bits specified in CDB byte 2, bits 6 & 7. The disc drive shall return the same Page Length for each supported page regardless of the value of PCF. The PCF field is defined in Table 5.2.1-19.

Table 5.2.1-19. Page Control Field Bits Affect On Mode Parameters Returned

**PCF Bit**

7      6

0	0	Return Current values. The Current values are the values currently being used by the disc drive to control its operation. After a Power On Reset, a hard Reset, or a Bus Device Reset message the Current values are equal to the Saved values (if Saved values can be retrieved) or the Default values (if Saved values cannot be retrieved). The Current value of a parameter is updated by a Mode Select command if the Mode Select Command ends with Good status returned.
0	1	Return Changeable values. The changeable values of any page is a mask that indicates the parameters that shall be changed via a Mode Select command and the parameters that shall not. Each returned parameter byte shall contain ones where a field or bit may be changed and zeros where a field or bit may not be changed.
1	0	Return Default values. The Default values are the values to which the disc drive sets the Current values after a reset condition unless valid Saved values are available.
1	1	Return Saved values. The saved values are the values the disc drive stores in nonvolatile memory. The Saved values of any changeable parameter can be set to new values via a Mode Select command with the SMP bit set to one. For nonchangeable parameters, the Default value is used.

The Block descriptor contains its normal values regardless of the value of the PCF. Unsupported fields or bits within a page are returned as zeros for all PCF values.

[4] The Page Code allows the initiator to select one or all of the pages of Mode parameters supported by the target. Page Codes that may be supported by the disc drive are summarized here (see individual drive Product Manual):

<b>Page Code</b>	<b>Description</b>
0h	Unit Attention Page parameters (returned last of the pages).
01h	Error Recovery parameters.
02h	Disconnect/Reconnect Control parameters.
03h	Format parameters.
04h	Rigid Disc Drive Geometry parameters.
07h	Verify Error Recovery Page parameters.
08h	Caching Page
0Ah	Control Mode Page
0Ch	Notch and Partition Page
3Fh	Return all supported pages.

[5] The Allocation Length specifies the number of bytes that the initiator has allocated for returned Mode Sense data. An Allocation Length of zero indicates that no Mode Sense data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error. Any other value indicates the *maximum* number of bytes that shall be transferred. The disc drive shall terminate the Data In phase when allocation length bytes have been transferred or when all available Mode Sense data has been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

[6] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

Table 5.2.1-20. Mode Sense Data

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Sense Data Length [1]							
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 [2]
2	WP [3]	Reserved		DPO-FUA [8]	Reserved			
		0	0		0	0	0	0
3	Block Descriptor Length (8 decimal)							
	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0 [4]

**BLOCK DESCRIPTOR DATA**

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 [5]
1	Number of Blocks (MSB)							
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 [6]
2	Number of Blocks							
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 [6]
3	Number of Blocks (LSB)							
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 [6]
4	Reserved							
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	Block Length (MSB) [7]							
6	Block Length [7]							
7	Block Length (LSB) [7]							

**PARAMETER INFORMATION**

0-n	Mode Sense Page Headers and Their Parameters
-----	--

See following page for notes.

*continued from previous page*

- [1] The Sense Data Length specifies the length in bytes of the following Mode Sense data that is available to be transferred during the Data In phase. The Sense Data Length does not include itself.
- [2] The disc drive supports only 00h (default medium) in the Medium Type field.
- [3] A Write Protect (WP) bit of zero indicates the medium is write enabled. A WP bit of one indicates the medium is write protected.
- [4] The Block Descriptor Length specifies the length in bytes of the Block Descriptor. It is equal to the number of bytes in the Block Descriptor (8) and does not include the page headers and mode parameters, if any. The disc drive sends one Block Descriptor.

Each Block Descriptor specifies the medium characteristics for all or part of a logical unit. Each Block Descriptor contains a Density Code, a Number of Blocks, and a Block Length.

- [5] The disc drive supports only 00h (default density) in the Density Code field.
- [6] The Number of Blocks field specifies the number of logical blocks of the medium that meets the Density Code and Block Length in the Block Descriptor. A Number of Blocks of zero indicates that all of the remaining logical blocks of the logical unit have the medium characteristics specified by the Block Descriptor. The disc drive always returns zeros in the Number of Blocks field.
- [7] The Block Length, as defined after a format function, specifies the length in bytes of each logical block described by the Block Descriptor. Default is 512 if no Mode Select command is received before the Format command. The usual valid values are 256 through 4096. Some disc drive products can format down to 180 bytes per sector. Some products can only format an even numbered value of bytes per sector (180 - 4096).
- [8] When used with the Mode Sense command, a DPOFUA bit of zero indicates that the target does not contain a cache memory or does not support the DPO and FUA bits. A DPOFUA bit of one indicates that the target supports the DPO and FUA bits.

**Mode Sense Page Descriptor Header****Table 5.2.1-21. Mode Sense Page Descriptor Header**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS	0	Page Code					[1]
1	Page Length							[1]
2-n	Mode Parameters							[1]

[1] Page Code	Page Description	Reference Table
01	Error Recovery	5.2.1-22
02	Disconnect/Reconnect Control	5.2.1-23
03	Format Parameters	5.2.1-24
04	Rigid Disc Drive Geometry	5.2.1-25
07	Verify Error Recovery Page	5.2.1-26
08	Caching Page	5.2.1-27
0A	Control Mode Page	5.2.1-28/29
0C	Notch and Partition Page	5.2.1-30
00	Unit Attention Page Parameters	5.2.1-31

Each page of mode parameters (for the Mode Sense command) begins with a two byte Page Descriptor Header. The Page Code identifies the page of mode parameters that is being transferred. The Page Length indicates the number of additional bytes of mode parameters being sent by the disc drive. The parameter bit values are left blank herein, because they may be different for each drive model.

**Note:** See the individual disc drive Product Manuals (Volume 1) section 11 for a Table giving the Mode Sense parameter values that are applicable to the disc drive model of interest. The tables in the Volume 1 also show which parameters are changeable in the drive model of interest and which are not.

Multiple pages of mode parameters may be transferred in one Mode Sense Data In phase (using Page Code 3Fh). If a non-supported page code is requested by the Initiator, the disc drive terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION status, sets the sense key to 05, ILLEGAL REQUEST, and sets the additional sense code to 24, INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

The Parameters Savable (PS) bit, when set to one, indicates if the page contains savable parameters. When the PS bit is set to zero, none of the parameters within the page are savable. Since the parameters within pages 3 and 4 are always saved during Format commands (but not via a Mode Select command with the SMP bit set to 1), these pages return a one for the PS bit.

**Error Recovery Page**

The disc drive Error Recovery Page implementation is defined in Table 5.2.1-22. This table summarizes: the function, the default value, and changeability status for each byte/bit.

**Table 5.2.1-22. Error Recovery Page****PAGE DESCRIPTOR HEADER**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS 1 [1]	0	0	Page Code (1 Decimal) 0 0 0 0 1				1
1	Page Length (Bytes) (0Ah)							

**ERROR RECOVERY PARAMETERS**

2	AWRE	ARRE	TB	RC	EER	PER	DTE	DCR
DEFAULT								[3]
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]							
3	Read Retry Count							
DEFAULT	[4]							
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]							
4	Correction Span (bits)							
DEFAULT	[5]							
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]							
5	Head Offset Count							
DEFAULT	[6]							
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]							
6	Data Strobe Offset Count							
DEFAULT	[7]							
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]							

**ERROR RECOVERY PARAMETERS (continued)**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
7 DEFAULT	Reserved [10]								
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]								
8 DEFAULT	Write Retry Count [8]								
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]								
9 DEFAULT	Reserved								
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]								
10	(MSB)	Recovery Time Limit						[9]	
11								LSB	
CHANGE- ABLE	[2]								

- [1] The returned PS (Parameter Savable) bit of 1 indicates that page 01h parameter data is savable. This bit is not used with the Mode Select command.
- [2] A value of zero means this bit function is not directly changeable by an initiator, a value of 1 means the bit function is directly changeable by an initiator. (See Mode Select Command). See drive Product Manuals (Volume1) section showing changeable values.
- [3] The Automatic Write Reallocation of defective data blocks Enabled (AWRE) bit, when set to one, allows the disc drive to automatically relocate bad blocks detected during write operations. The drive performs the automatic write reallocation only if the drive has the valid data (e.g., original data in the buffer or recovered from the medium). The valid data is placed in the reallocated block. This function doesn't apply to the Format Unit command. When set to zero, the disc drive shall not perform automatic reallocation but shall create Check Condition status with Sense Key of Medium Error instead.

The Automatic Read Reallocation of defective data blocks Enabled (ARRE) bit, when set to one, allows the disc drive to automatically relocate bad blocks detected during read operations. Automatic reallocation is performed only if the drive successfully recovers the data and is able to place it in the reallocated block. When set to zero, the disc drive shall not perform automatic reallocation but shall create Check Condition status with Sense Key of Medium Error instead.

The Transfer Block (TB) bit, when set to one, indicates the data block that is not recovered shall be transferred to the initiator. When set to zero, the failing data block shall not be transferred.

The Read Continuous (RC) bit, when set to one, requests the disc drive to transfer the requested data length without adding delays (for retries or ECC correction) that may be required to ensure data integrity. The disc drive may send erroneous data in order to maintain the continuous flow of data. This bit shall override the DTE bit if it is set. RC bit has priority also over EER, DCR and PER bits. When set to zero, recovery actions during data transfer are allowed. This bit is set to zero and is not changeable in most if not all of the drive models covered by this manual. See drive Product Manual Volume 1 section showing changeable values.

*continued from previous page*

The Enable Early Recovery (EER) bit, when set to one, allows the disc drive to apply ECC correction as soon as possible, before the retry count is exhausted. Seek error retries and message system errors are not affected by this bit. When this bit is set, the DCR bit must be zero. When the EER bit is set to zero, the disc drive shall exhaust the retry count before applying ECC correction.

The Post Error (PER) bit, when set to one, indicates the disc drive reports Check Condition status and appropriate Sense Key for any *recovered errors* encountered. Reporting of unrecoverable errors has priority over reporting of recoverable errors. When set to zero, any errors recovered within the limits established by the other Error Recovery Flags are not reported. Any unrecoverable errors are reported.

The Disable Transfer on Error (DTE) bit is valid only when the PER bit is set to one. When the DTE bit is set to one, it indicates the disc drive terminates data transfer even for recoverable errors. The setting of the TB bit determines whether the block in error is to be transferred. When DTE is set to zero, data transfer continues if recoverable errors are encountered. If the PER bit is one and the DTE bit is zero, recoverable errors are reported after all data has been transferred.

The Disable Correction (DCR) bit, when set to one, indicates ECC correction shall not be applied to the data even if correction is possible. When set to zero, ECC correction shall be applied if correction is possible.

- [4] The Retry Count is the maximum number of times the disc drive attempts its read recovery algorithms. The Retry Count is changeable between 0 and 27 inclusive. A Retry Count of zero inhibits retries from being performed. If the EER bit is set then the number of retries specified by the Retry Count, up to a maximum of nine retries, are performed before ECC is applied. If a recovery time limit (see note [1]) is specified, the field that requires the least time for data recovery actions has first priority.
- [5] The Correction Span is the size of the largest read data error, in bits, on which ECC correction is to be attempted. Errors longer than this span are reported as unrecoverable. This value is drive dependent. If this field is zero the drive uses its default value.
- [6] The disc drive Head Offset Count is a default of zero and not changeable to signify that this feature is not programmable by the initiator. Head offsets are performed as part of the disc drive's retry algorithms.
- [7] The disc drive Data Strobe Offset Count is a default of zero and not changeable to signify that this feature is not programmable by the initiator. Data Strobe Offsets are performed as part of the disc drive's retry algorithms.
- [8] The write retry count field specifies the number of times that the target shall attempt its recovery algorithm during write operations.
- [9] Recovery Time limit in milliseconds. A hex FFFF indicates that the Recovery Time Limit is unlimited.
- [10] In SCSI-1 mode of operation, this byte is the recovery time limit value (see [9] above).



**Disconnect/Reconnect Control Page**

The Disconnect/Reconnect Page implementation is defined in Table 5.2.1-23. This table summarizes the function and defines the default value and changeable status.

**Table 5.2.1-23. Disconnect/Reconnect Control Page**

PAGE DESCRIPTOR HEADER								
Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS		Page Code 02h					
1	1[1]	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Page Length (0Eh)								
DISCONNECT/RECONNECT CONTROL PARAMETERS								
2	Buffer Full Ratio							[3]
DEFAULT	-----							
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
3	Buffer Empty Ratio							[4]
DEFAULT	-----							
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
4	Bus Inactivity Limit (MSB)							[5]
DEFAULT	-----							
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
5	Bus Inactivity Limit (LSB)							
DEFAULT	-----							
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
6,7	Disconnect Time Limit							[6]
DEFAULT	-----							
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
8,9	Connect Time Limit							[7]
DEFAULT	-----							
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
10,11	MSB	Maximum Burst Size					[8]	
DEFAULT	-----							LSB
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
12	EMDP 0	0	0	0	0	0	DTDC[9]	
DEFAULT	[10]	-----					0	0
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
13 - 15	Reserved							

**Notes for Table 5.2.1-23.**

- [1] The PS (Parameter Savable) bit of 1 indicates that the page 02h parameter data is savable.
- [2] A changeable value of zero means this function is not directly changeable by an initiator. A value of 1 means the bit function is directly changeable by an initiator. (See Mode Select command.) See drive Product Manual Mode Sense data section for table showing changeable values.
- [3] Both ratio parameters are the numerators of a fractional multiplier that has 256 (100h) as its denominator.
- [4] inator.

*continued from previous page*

- [3] The Buffer Full Ratio indicates, on Read commands, how full the disc drive's buffer shall be before attempting a reselection. The disc drive rounds the requested ratio up to the nearest whole logical block. This value is changeable by an initiator.

The buffer full ratio is taken to be a percentage of the smaller of

a) the buffer size

or

b) the remaining transfer length.

For example, if the buffer full ratio is 80h (128 Decimal) (indicating a 128/256 or 50% value), the transfer length of a read command is 20h blocks, and the buffer size is 30h blocks, the reconnect begins when 10h blocks (50% of the transfer length of 20h blocks) is in the buffer.

- [4] The Buffer Empty Ratio indicates, on Write commands, how empty the disc drive's buffer shall be before attempting a reselection. The disc drive, rounds the requested ratio down to the nearest whole logical block. This value is changeable by an initiator.
- [5] The Bus Inactivity Limit field (bytes 4 & 5) indicates the time, in 100 microsecond increments, the disc drive is allowed to assert the Busy signal without handshakes until it shall disconnect. The value of ten indicates the disc drive is allowed to maintain the Busy signal for one millisecond without handshakes. A value of zero indicates that there is no bus inactivity limit. This value is not changeable by the initiator.
- [6] The Disconnect Time Limit field (bytes 6 and 7) indicates the minimum time, in 100 microsecond increments, the disc drive shall remain disconnected until it shall attempt to reconnect. A value of zero indicates the disc drive is allowed to reconnect immediately. For the typical disc drive, this is likely to always be zero and the changeable code is always zero. (See individual Product Manual).
- [7] The Connect Time Limit field (bytes 8 and 9) indicates the maximum time in 100 microsecond increments that the target should remain connected until it attempts to disconnect. A setting of zero indicates that the disc drive is allowed to remain connected indefinitely until it attempts disconnection.
- [8] The maximum burst size field indicates the maximum amount of data that the target shall transfer during a data phase before disconnecting if the initiator has granted the disconnect privilege. This value is expressed in increments of 512 bytes (e.g., a value of one means 512 bytes, two means 1024 bytes, etc.). A value of zero indicates there is no limit on the amount of data transferred per connection.
- [9] The data transfer disconnect control (DTDC) field is intended to define further restrictions on when a disconnect is permitted. A value of 00b indicates the field is not used.

DTDC typically is not used, since disconnect may be controlled by the other fields in this page. See individual Product Manual Mode Sense Data table to see if this field has changeable values in the drive model of interest.

- [10] The Enable Modify Data Pointers (EMDP) bit indicates whether or not the initiator allows the Modify Data Pointers message to be sent by the target. If the EMDP bit is zero, the target shall not issue the Modify Data Pointers Message. If the EMDP bit is one, the target is allowed to issue Modify Data Pointers Message.

**Format Parameters Page**

The Format Parameters Page implementation is defined in Table 5.2.1-24. This table summarizes the function and defines the default or changeability status for each bit.

**Table 5.2.1-24. Format Parameter Page**

Page Descriptor Header									
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Byte(s)									
0	PS 1[1]	0	Page Code 03h 0 0 0 0 1					1	1
1	Page Length (16h)								
Format Parameters [1]									
2,3	Tracks per Zone (MSB)							[2]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
4,5	Alternate Sectors per Zone							[3]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
6,7	Alternate Tracks per Zone							[4]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
8,9	Alternate Tracks per Volume							[5]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
10,11	Sectors per Track							[6]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
12,13	Data Bytes per Physical Sector							[7]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
14,15	Interleave							[8]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
16,17	Track Skew Factor							[9]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
18,19	Cylinder Skew Factor							[10]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
20	SSEC	HSEC	RMB	SURF	Reserved			[11]	
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								
21,22,23	Reserved								
DEFAULT	-----								
CHANGEABLE	[12]								

---

Notes for Table 5.2.1-24. Format Parameter Page (continued)

- [1] The only time this page of parameters may be sent is immediately before sending a Format Unit command to the disc drive. The Current parameters for this page are updated immediately but any changes between these Current parameters and the existing media format are not in effect until after the Format Unit command is completed. A PS bit of 1 indicates this page is savable. The PS bit is not used with the Mode Select command.
- [2] The Tracks per Zone\* field indicates the number of tracks the disc drive allocates to each defect management zone. Seagate drives define a defect management zone as one track or one cylinder. A programmed value of 1 defines one track per zone (i.e. spare sectors per track). Any other recorded value results in the drive defining one cylinder as the defect management zone and the drive automatically inserts the number of read/write heads (i.e. number of tracks per cylinder) in this field. Default value is usually 1, but see individual drive Product Manual.
- [3] The Alternate Sectors per Zone\* field indicates the number of spare sectors to be reserved for the defined defect management zone. A value of zero indicates that no sectors are to be reserved in each zone for defect management. This is to accommodate hosts that want to manage the defects themselves. The maximum Initiator programmable value is one less than the minimum number of sectors per track for the drives. One is a reasonable maximum if one track is defined as the defect management zone (i.e. one spare sector per track). Eight is a reasonable maximum if one cylinder is defined as the defect management zone. The usual Default value is 1 for typical drives (with default value in note [2] defined as one spare sector per track).
- [4] The Alternate Tracks per Zone\* field indicates the number of spare tracks to be reserved at the end of each defect management zone. A value of zero indicates that no spare tracks are to be reserved in each zone for defect management by the disc drive.
- [5] The Alternate Tracks per Volume field indicates the number of spare tracks to be reserved at the end of the drive volume. The disc drive uses these locations for replacing defective sectors. A value of zero indicates that no spare tracks are to be reserved at the end of the unit for defect management. Typically the disc drive defaults to two times the number of read/write heads in the drive, which amounts to two spare cylinders. The initiator may change this value for a number between 0 and 255 that is a multiple of the total number of Data Read/Write heads installed.
- [6] The Sectors per Track field indicates the *average* number of physical sectors the disc drive has per disc track. This value depends on the selected sector size and ZBR zones. The number of user accessible sectors per track may be fewer than the reported value, since sectors per Track includes sectors set aside for defect management. This value cannot be used to calculate drive user accessible capacity.

**Note.** The value cannot be directly selected with the Mode Select command, but is a report of how the drive is configured.

- [7] The Bytes per Physical Sector field indicates the number of data bytes the disc drive shall allocate per physical sector. This value equals the block length reported in the Mode Sense block descriptor. The bytes per physical sector is not directly changeable by the initiator and is not verified on a Mode Select command.
- \* Defect management zone (one or more tracks), NOT a ZBR (variable track capacity recording) zone. ZBR zones are referred to as notches (page 0Ch is the Notch page).

The actual implementation of reserving spare areas for defect management takes place during the Format Unit command.

---

*continued from previous page*

[8] The Interleave field is the interleave value sent to the disc drive during the last Format Unit command.

**Note.** This field is valid only for Mode Sense commands. The disc drive ignores this field during Mode Select commands.

[9] The Track Skew Factor field indicates the average number of physical sectors between the last logical block on one track and the first logical block on the next sequential track of the same cylinder. A value of zero indicates no skew.

**Note.** This value is not changeable by an initiator.

[10] The Cylinder Skew Factor field indicates the average number of physical sectors between the last logical block of one cylinder and the first logical block of the next cylinder. A value of zero indicates no skew. Cylinder skew will be utilized by a disc drive but is not changeable by an initiator.

[11] The Drive Type field bits are defined as follows:

The Hard Sectoring (HSEC) bit (bit 6) set to one indicates the disc drive shall use hard sector formatting. The soft sectoring (SSEC) bit (bit 7) when set to one indicates the drive uses soft sectoring.

Bits 0-5, and 7 are not implemented by the disc drive and are always zero. All bits (0-7) are not changeable.

[12] See drive Product Manual Mode Sense Data section for changeable values.

## Rigid Disc Drive Geometry Parameters

The Rigid Disc Drive Geometry Parameters Page implementation is defined in Table 5.2.1-25. This table summarizes the function and defines the default value.

Table 5.2.1-25. Rigid Disc Drive Geometry Parameters

### PAGE DESCRIPTOR HEADER

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS 1[1]	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
1	Page Length (16h)							

### RIGID DISC DRIVE GEOMETRY PARAMETERS

2 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Number of Cylinders (MSB) ----- [8]	[2]
3 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Number of Cylinders ----- [8]	
4 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Number of Cylinders (LSB) ----- [8]	[2]
5 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Number of Heads ----- [8]	[3]
6,7,8 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Starting Cylinder - Write Precomp ----- [8]	[4]
9,10,11 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Starting Cylinder-Reduced Write Current ----- [8]	[4]
12,13 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Drive Step Rate ----- [8]	[4]
14,15,16 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Landing Zone Cylinder ----- [8]	[4]

PAGE DESCRIPTOR HEADER (continued)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
17 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	0	0	0	0	0	0	RPL	[5]	
	----- [8] -----								
18 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE				Rotational Offset XXh				[6]	
	----- [8] -----								
19 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	----- [8] -----								
20 21	(MSB)			Medium Rotation Rate				[7]	(LSB)
22 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE				Reserved					
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	----- [8] -----								
23 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE				Reserved					
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	----- [8] -----								

Notes for Table 5.2.1-25.

- [1] The PS bit of 1 indicates that page 04 parameter data is savable and is saved when a Format Function is performed. In some drives an exception exists that applies to bytes 17 and 18. In the exception drives, bytes 17 and 18 are only saved if the SMP bit in the Mode Select Command (Table 5.2.1-12) is 1. See applicable drive Product Manual Volume 1, "SCSI Bus conditions and miscellaneous features supported". This PS bit is not applicable to the Mode Select command.
- [2] The maximum number of user accessible cylinders. The reported value does not include spare cylinders (tracks) set aside for flaw reallocation.

The disc drive uses some additional cylinders for storing disc drive parameters, defect lists, or for diagnostic purposes. These are not accessible by the user.

- [3] The Number of Heads field indicates the maximum number of data (read/write) heads on the disc drive.
- [4] Not applicable.
- [5] Used for Spindle Synchronization (rotation position locking).

#### Rotational Position Locking

RPL	Description
00b	Indicates that spindle synchronization is automatic. (Automatic master arbitration is used to determine which device in the chain is to be master).
01b	The target operates as a synchronized-spindle slave.
10b	The target operates as a synchronized-spindle master.
11b	The target operates as a synchronized-spindle master control (Not supported by disc drive).

- [6] Rotational skew in the lagging direction used for spindle synchronization. The value XXh given represents a XXh/FFh fractional part of a revolution lagging offset. One revolution lag is maximum. See section on Synchronous Spindle Operation in drive Product Manual Vol. 1.
- [7] On Mode Sense Command these bytes return drive nominal rotation rate in revolutions per minute for synchronous spindle operation. The bytes have no meaning for Mode Select.
- [8] See drive Product Manual Mode Sense Data section for changeable values.



Table 5.2.1-26. Verify Error Recovery Page (07h)  
PAGE DESCRIPTOR HEADER

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS 1[1]	Rsvd 0	Page Code (07h)					
1	Parameter Length (0Ah)							

VERIFY ERROR RECOVERY PAGE PARAMETERS

2	Reserved			ERR	PER	DTE	DCR[2]
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
3	Verify Retry Count						[3]
DEFAULT	[6]						
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
4	Verify Correction Span (Bits)						[4]
DEFAULT	[6]						
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
5	Reserved						
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
6	Reserved						
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
7	Reserved						
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
8	Reserved						
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
9	Reserved						
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
10	(MSB)	Verify Recovery Time Limit				(LSB)	[5]
DEFAULT	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
CHANGEABLE	[6]						
11	Verify Recovery Time Limit				(LSB)	[5]	
DEFAULT	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
CHANGEABLE	[6]						

The verify error recovery page (Table 5.2.1-26) specifies the error recovery parameters the target shall use during the Verify command and the verify operation of the Write and Verify command.

**Notes.**

- [1] The parameters savable (PS) bit is used only with the Mode Sense command. This bit is reserved with the Mode Select command. A PS bit of one indicates that the target is capable of saving the page in a non-volatile vendor specific location.
- [2] The EER, PER DTE and DCR bits are defined in Table 5.2.1-22 notes.
- [3] The verify retry count field specifies the number of times that the drive shall attempt its recovery algorithm during a verify operation. If the verify retry count and the verify recovery time limit are both specified, the one that requires the least time for data error recovery actions shall have priority.
- [4] The verify correction span field specifies the size, in bits, of the largest burst data error for which data error correction may be attempted. If the drive does not implement this field, a value of zero is returned in Mode Sense data.
- [5] The verify recovery time limit field specifies in increments of one millisecond the maximum time duration that the drive shall use error recovery procedures to recover data for an individual logical block. If the verify retry count and the verify recovery time limit are both specified, the one that requires the least time for a data error recovery actions shall have priority. The drive may round this value.

To disable all types of correction and retries the initiator sets the ERR bit to zero the PER, DTE and DCR bits to one and the number of retries and recovery time limit to zero.

- [6] See drive Product Manual Mode Sense Data section for changeable values.

**Caching Page For Mode Sense/Mode Select**

The caching parameters page (08h) defines the parameters that affect the use of the cache. See Table 5.2.1-27.

**Table 5.2.1-27. Caching Parameters**

**PAGE DESCRIPTOR HEADER**

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS[1]	Rsvd	Page Code (08h)					
1	Page Length (12h)							
2	IC	ABPF	CAP	DISC	SIZE	WCE	MF	RCD [3]
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
3	Demand Read Retention Pri. [4]				Write Retention Priority [5]			
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
4	(MSB) Disable Pre-Fetch Transfer Length [6]							
5	CHANGEABLE [2]							
6	(MSB) Minimum Pre-Fetch [7]							
7	CHANGEABLE [2]							
8	(MSB) Maximum Pre-fetch [8]							
9	CHANGEABLE [2]							
10	(MSB) Maximum Pre-fetch Ceiling [9]							
11	CHANGEABLE [2]							
12	FSW	Rsvd	DRA	Rsvd		[10]	[11]	
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
13	Number of Cache Segments [12]							
CHANGEABLE	[2]							
14	(MSB) Cache Segment Size [13]							
15	CHANGEABLE							
16	Rsvd							
17	(MSB) Non-Cache Segment Size [14]							
18	CHANGEABLE							
19	CHANGEABLE							

**Notes for Table 5.2.1-27.**

- [1] The returned PS (Parameter Savable) bit of 1 indicates that page 01h parameter data is savable.
- [2] A value of zero means this bit function is not directly changeable by an initiator, a value of 1 means the bit function is directly changeable by an initiator. (See Mode Select Command). See drive Product Manuals section 11.3.2 for changeable values.
- [3] IC: The Initiator Control (IC) enable bit (Bit 7 Byte 2), when set to one, adaptive read look-ahead (RLA) is disabled. When IC is set to zero (RLA) is enabled. Since Seagate drives covered by this manual never organize the cache according to size of segment, but rather by number of segments, this bit is used to enable or disable adaptive RLA.

ABPF: The Abort Pre-Fetch (ABPF) bit (Bit 6 Byte 2), when set to one, with the DRA bit equal to zero, requests that the SCSI device abort the pre-fetch upon selection. The ABPF set to one takes precedence over the Minimum Pre-fetch bytes. When set to zero, with the DRA bit equal to zero, the termination of any active pre-fetch is dependent upon Caching Page bytes 4 through 11 and is operation and/or vendor specific.

CAP: Caching Analysis Permitted (CAP) a one in this bit enables caching analysis. A zero indicates caching analysis is disabled. Caching analysis results are placed in the SCSI Logging Information Table, Table 5.1.3.2-9. See individual drive Product Manual "SCSI Bus Conditions and Miscellaneous Features Supported" table.

DISC: The Discontinuity (DISC) bit (Bit 4 Byte 2), when set to one, requests that the SCSI device continue the pre-fetch across time discontinuities, such as across cylinders (or tracks in an embedded servo drive), up to the limits of the buffer, or segment, space available for pre-fetch. When set to zero, the DISC requests that pre-fetches be truncated (or wrapped) at time discontinuities.

SIZE: The Size Enable (SIZE) bit (Bit 3 Byte 2), when set to one, indicates that the Cache Segment Size is to be used to control caching segmentation. When SIZE equals zero, the Initiator requests that the *Number of Cache Segments* is to be used to control caching segmentation. For Seagate drives covered by this manual SIZE is always zero.

**WCE:** Write Cache Enable.

- 0: SCSI Write commands may not return status and completion message bytes until all data has been written to the media.
- 1: SCSI Write commands may return status and completion message bytes as soon as all data has been received from the host.

**MF:** Multiplication Factor.

- 0: The "Minimum Pre-fetch" and "Maximum pre-fetch" fields are interpreted as a number of logical blocks.
- 1: Specifies that the target shall interpret the minimum and maximum pre-fetch fields to be specified in terms of a scalar number which, when multiplied by the number of logical blocks to be transferred for the current command, yields the number of logical blocks for each of the respective types of pre-fetch.

**RCD:** Read Cache Disable.

- 0: SCSI Read commands may access the cache or the media.
- 1: SCSI Read commands must access the media. Data cannot come from the cache.

- [4] Demand Read Retention Priority:

The cache replacement algorithm does not distinguish between retention in the cache of host-requested data and prefetch data. Therefore, this half byte is always 0.

*continued from previous page*

- [5] Write Retention Priority:  
The cache replacement algorithm does distinguish between retention in the cache of host-requested data and prefetch data. Therefore, this half byte is always 0.
- [6] Disable Pre-fetch Transfer Length:  
Prefetch is disabled for any SCSI Read command whose requested transfer length exceeds this value.
- [7] Minimum Pre-fetch:  
Specifies the minimum number sectors to pre-fetch, regardless of the delay it may cause to other commands.
- [8] Maximum Pre-fetch:  
Specifies the maximum number of logical blocks that may be pre-fetched. The pre-fetch operation may be aborted before the maximum pre-fetch value is reached, but only if the minimum pre-fetch value has been satisfied.
- [9] The maximum Pre-fetch Ceiling field specifies an upper limit on the number of logical blocks computed as the maximum pre-fetch. If the Maximum Prefetch value is greater than the Maximum Pre-fetch ceiling the value is Truncated to the Maximum Pre-fetch Ceiling value.
- [10] FSW: The Force Sequential Write (FSW) bit (Bit 7 Byte 12). When set to one, indicates that multiple block writes are to be transferred over the SCSI bus and written to the media in an ascending, sequential, logical block order. When the FSW bit equals zero, the target is allowed to reorder the sequence of writing addressed logical blocks in order to achieve a faster command completion.
- [11] DRA: The Disable Read-Ahead (DRA) bit (Bit 5 Byte 12), when set to one, requests that the target not read into the buffer any logical blocks beyond the addressed logical block(s). When the DRA bit equals zero, the target may continue to read logical blocks into the buffer beyond the addressed logical block(s).
- [12] Number of Cache Segments:  
The Number of Cache Segments byte (Byte 13) gives the number of segments into which the host requests the drive divide the cache.
- [13] Cache Segment Size:  
The Cache Segment Size field (Bytes 14 and 15) indicates the requested segment size in Bytes. This standard assumes that the Cache Segment Size field is valid only when the SIZE bit is one.
- [14] Non-Cache Segment Size:  
If the Non-Cache Buffer size field (Bytes 17-19) is greater than zero, this field specifies to the target the number of bytes the initiator requests that the target allocate for a buffer function when all other cache segments are occupied by data to be retained. If the number is at least one, caching functions in the other segments need not be impacted by cache misses to perform the SCSI buffer function. The impact of the Non-Cache Buffer Size equal 0 or the same of this field plus the Cache Segment Size greater than the buffer size is vendor specific.

In addition to the caching control provided by the Caching Mode page, some 10-byte commands contain control bits DPO and FUA the intent of which is override the cache page control bits. However, the use of these bits is not supported by drives covered by this manual at this time. If either DPO or FUA are one, the drive

continued from previous page

reports "check condition" and returns an Illegal Request sense code. These bits are described below for information only:

**DPO:** Disable Page Out. This bit should always be zero.

If DPO = 1, the cache replacement algorithm should not replace existing cache data with the current data (if possible). If a cache segment must be overwritten, it should be made the LRU.

**FUA:** Force Unit Access. This bit should always be zero.

**Read:** If FUA = 1, the requested data must be read from the media. If cache data which overlaps the request has not yet been written to the media, it should be written before the read is allowed to occur.

**Write:** If FUA = 1, all data must be written to the media before the SCSI operation returns the status and completion message bytes.

### Mode Sense/Mode Select Control Mode page

Table 5.2.1-28. Control Mode Page

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS 1[1]	Rsvd	Page Code (0Ah)					
1	Page Length (0Ah)							
2	Reserved							RLEC
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	[2]
CHANGEABLE	[7]							
3	Queue Algorithm Modifier				Reserved		QErr	DQue
DEFAULT	[3]				0		0	[5]
CHANGEABLE	[7]						[4]	
4	EECA		Reserved			Not Supported		
DEFAULT	[6]		0			0		
CHANGEABLE			[7]					
5	Reserved							
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
CHANGEABLE	[7]							
6 & 7	Not Supported							
DEFAULT	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
CHANGEABLE	[7]							
8 & 9	Busy Timeout Period							
DEFAULT	[8]							
CHANGEABLE	[7]							
10	Reserved (All Zeros)							
11	Reserved (All Zeros)							

*continued from previous page*

The control mode page (Table 5.2.1-28) provides controls over several SCSI-2 features which are applicable to all device types such as tagged queuing, extended contingent allegiance, asynchronous event notification, and error logging.

**Notes.**

- [1] The PS (Parameter Savable) bit of 1 indicates that the page 0Ah parameter data is savable in non-volatile memory.
- [2] A report log exception condition (RLEC) bit of one specifies that the target shall report log exception conditions. A RLEC bit of zero specifies that the drive does not report Log exception conditions.
- [3] The queue algorithm modifier field specifies restrictions on the algorithm used for re-ordering commands that are tagged with the SIMPLE QUEUE TAG message.

**Table 5.2.1-29. Queue Algorithm Modifier**

Value	Definition	Value	Definition
0h	Guaranteed data integrity	2h - 7h	Reserved
1h	Unrestricted re-ordering allowed	8h - Fh	Vendor Specific

A value of 0h in the Queue Algorithm Modifier bits requires the device to order the actual execution sequence of the queued command such that data integrity is guaranteed at any time. This requires that, if the data transmission of a command was halted at any time, the final value of all data must have exactly the same value it would have had if the command had been executed without queuing. The guaranteed data integrity value (0h) of the queue algorithm modifier bits is the usual default value.

A value of 1h in the Queue Algorithm Modifier bits allows the device to order the actual execution sequence of the queued commands in any manner it selects. Any data integrity problems related to command sequence ordering are explicitly handled by the host operating system software.

- [4] A Queue Error Management (QErr) bit of zero indicates that those commands still queued after the device has entered the contingent allegiance condition continue execution in a normal manner when that condition has terminated. A QErr bit of one indicates that those commands still queued after the device has entered the contingent allegiance condition shall be aborted when that condition has terminated. A unit attention condition is created for each initiator that had commands in the queue, but not for the initiator detecting the original error.
- [5] A Disable Queuing (DQue) bit of one indicates that tagged queuing is disabled on the disc drive. Any pending commands in the queue for that I T X nexus is aborted. Any subsequent queue tag message received shall be rejected with a Message Reject message and the I/O process shall be executed as an untagged command. A DQue bit of zero indicates that tagged queuing is enabled, if the drive supports tagged Queuing.
- [6] An Enable Extended Contingent Allegiance (EECA) bit of one indicates that the device has enabled the extension of the contingent allegiance condition. An EECA bit of zero indicates that the extension of the contingent allegiance condition is disabled.
- [7] See drive Product Manual Mode Sense Data section for changeable values.
- [8] The Busy Timeout Period field specifies the maximum time, in 100 millisecond increments, that the initiator allows for the target to remain busy for unanticipated conditions that are not a routine part of commands from the initiator. This value may be rounded down as defined in section 4.8 of this manual. A 0000h value in this field is undefined by this specification. An FFFFh in this field is defined as an unlimited period.

## Notch Page

The notch page (Table 5.2.1-30) contains parameters for direct access devices that implement a variable number of blocks per cylinder and support this page. Each section of the drive with a different number of blocks per cylinder is referred to as a notch.

Table 5.2.1-30. Notch Page

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS [1]	Rsvd 0	Page Code (0Ch) 0 0 1 1 0 0					
1	Page Length (16h)							
2 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	ND [2]	LPN [3]	Reserved 0 0 0 0 0 0					
	[9]							
3 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	Reserved 0 0 0 0 0 0							
	[9]							
4,5 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	(MSB)		Maximum Number of Notches				(LSB) [4]	
	[9]							
6,7 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	(MSB)		Active Notch				(LSB) [5]	
	[10]							
8-11 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	(MSB)		Starting Boundary				(LSB) [6]	
	[9]							
12-15 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	(MSB)		Ending Boundary				(LSB) [7]	
	[9]							
16-23 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	(MSB)		Pages Notched				(LSB) [8]	
	[9]							

### Notes.

- [1] The parameters savable (PS) bit is only used with the Mode Sense command. This bit is reserved with the Mode Select command. A PS bit of one indicates that the drive is capable of saving the page in a non-volatile vendor-specific location.
- [2] A notched drive (ND) bit of zero indicates that the device is not notched and that all other parameters in this page shall be returned as zero by the drive. A ND bit of one indicates that the drive is notched. For each supported active notch value this page defines the starting and ending boundaries of the notch.
- [3] A logical or physical notch (LPN) bit of zero indicates that the notch boundaries are based on the physical parameters of the drive. The cylinder is considered most significant, the head least significant. A LPN bit of one indicates that the notch boundaries are based on logical blocks on the drive.
- [4] The maximum number of notches field indicates the maximum number of notches supported by the drive.



---

*continued from previous page*

- [5] The active notch field indicates the notch to which this and subsequent Mode Select and Mode Sense commands shall refer, until the active notch is changed by a later Mode Select command. The value of the active notch shall be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the maximum number of notches. A active notch value of zero indicates that this and subsequent Mode Select and Mode Sense commands refer to the parameters that apply across all notches.
- [6] The starting boundary field indicates the beginning of the active notch or, if the active notch is zero, the beginning boundary of the drive. If the LPN bit is one, then the four bytes represent a logical block address. If the LPN bit is zero, then the three most significant bytes shall represent the cylinder number and the least significant byte shall represent the head number. When used with the Mode Select command this field is ignored.
- [7] The ending boundary field indicates the ending of the active notch or, if the active notch is zero, the ending of the drive. If the LPN bit is one, then the four bytes represent logical block address. If the LPN bit is zero, then the three most significant bytes shall represent the cylinder number and the least significant byte shall represent the head number. When used with the Mode Select command this field is ignored.

Each notch shall span a set of consecutive logical blocks on the drive, the notches shall not overlap, and no logical block shall be excluded from a notch.

- [8] The pages notched field is a bit map of the mode page codes that indicates which pages contain parameters that may be different for different notches. The most significant bit of this field corresponds to page code 3Fh and the least significant bit corresponds to page code 00h. If a bit is one, then the corresponding mode page contains parameters that may be different for different notches. If a bit is zero, then the corresponding mode page contains parameters that are constant for all notches.
- [9] These values are not changeable.
- [10] See drive Product Manual Mode Sense Data section for changeable values.

Table 5.2.1-31. Unit Attention Parameters (00h)

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS 1	0	0	Page Code (0h) 0 0 0 0 0				
1	Page Length (in bytes)							
2 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE	0	SSM [1]	IL [2]	Unit- Attn[3] [7]	0	Rnd [4]	Strict [5]	0
3 DEFAULT CHANGEABLE								[6]
								[7]

Page zero is the last page to be reported by the drive.

#### Notes.

- [1] If the enable Synchronous Select Mode (SSM) bit equals one the drive will initiate an SDTR message when it recognizes that one may be required. If the SSM bit equals zero the drive will not initiate an SDTR message unless the initiator has already issued a prior SDTR message. This function accommodates initiator drivers that do not gracefully accommodate SDTR messages.
- [2] "Inquiry Length" (IL) bit. When the IL bit is set to 1, the standard INQUIRY data available to a host is limited to the 36 bytes required by the SCSI-2 specification. When the IL bit is reset (0), 148 bytes of standard INQUIRY data are available. The Additional Length field in byte 4 of the INQUIRY data is updated to reflect the actual number of additional bytes available.
- [3] When the Unit Attn bit is set to 1, then Unit Attention is logged in sense only; no Check Condition Status is presented following any reset. When this bit is RESET (0) then Check Condition is presented for all affected Initiators following a reset until Request Sense is issued by each Initiator (as per current operation).
- [4] When the Round bit equals one, the drive treats and reports rounded parameters as described in Section 4.8. When Round equals zero the drive shall round the parameter and handle command completion reporting as if the parameter had not been rounded.
- [5] When the Strict bit is a one, the drive checks for Initiator attempts to change unchangeable parameters. If the drive detects an attempt it rejects the command in the standard way, i.e., Check Condition status from drive, Request Sense from the Initiator, Illegal Request sense key (5h) back from the drive. When the Strict bit is zero, the drive ignores the values of the unchangeable parameters in a Mode Select command. The drive does not reject the command trying to change unchangeable parameters.
- [6] This byte is reserved for future compatibility with Seagate host adapters. Though presently may be changeable, (see note [7]) this byte does not control anything, unless the individual drive Product Manual indicates that it does and defines its use in the Mode Sense Data section.
- [7] See individual drive Product Manual Mode Sense Data section for a table showing codes that indicate which of these bits are changeable by the host using the Mode Select command.

5.2.1.11 Start Stop Unit Command (1Bh)

Table 5.2.1-32. Start/Stop Unit Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1
1	Logical Unit No. 0 0 0			0	0	0	0	IMMED [1]
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Start [2]
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [3]

The Start/Stop Unit command requests that the target enable the logical unit for further operations (start), or stop spindle rotation (stop).

**Notes.**

- [1] An Immed bit of zero indicates that status shall be returned after the operation is completed. If the Immed bit is a one status is returned as soon as the operation is initiated.
- [2] When the Start bit is a one, this requests that the logical unit be made ready for use. If the Start bit is zero (requesting that the unit be stopped), the request causes the drive to either actually stop the spindle or to simulate the drive spindle stopped condition. In this latter situation the drive spindle actually continues to spin and the drive reports not Ready in response to media access commands. Power consumption is as when in idle mode. The type of stop implemented is given in the drive Product Manual.
- [3] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

The disc drive is able to execute the following commands when the drive spindle is not rotating, or in a simulated stopped condition.

- |                 |                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| Test Unit Ready | Motor Start                |
| Request Sense   | Receive Diagnostic Results |
| Inquiry         | Write Data Buffer          |
| Reserve         | Read Data Buffer           |
| Release         |                            |

The remaining commands (see section "SCSI Interface commands supported" in drive Product Manual for list of all commands supported) cannot be executed until after the drive has spindled up. If the disc drive receives one of these commands before it can be executed, a "Check Condition" status is returned (with Sense Key of "Not Ready").

For systems that support disconnection, the disc drive disconnects when a Start Unit procedure is commanded, and reconnects when the unit is up to speed and Ready or when operation is initiated if the "Immed" bit is one.

### 5.2.1.12 Prevent/Allow Medium Removal Command (1Eh)

Not implemented by the disc drive. If received, the disc drive terminates with Check Condition status and set an Illegal Request Sense Key.

### 5.2.2 Group 1 Command for Direct Access Devices

The Group 1 commands that may be implemented by the disc drive are listed in Table 5.2.2-1.

See section "SCSI Interface commands supported" in the individual drive Product Manuals for complete list of commands supported.

Table 5.2.2-1. Group 1 Commands for Direct Access Devices

Operation Code (Hex)	Command Name	Section
25	READ CAPACITY	5.2.2.1
28	READ EXTENDED	5.2.2.2
2A	WRITE EXTENDED	5.2.2.3
2B	SEEK EXTENDED	5.2.2.4
2E	WRITE AND VERIFY	5.2.2.5
2F	VERIFY	5.2.2.6
35	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	5.2.2.7
37	READ DEFECT DATA	5.2.2.8
3B	WRITE DATA BUFFER	5.1.2.3
3C	READ DATA BUFFER	5.1.2.4
3E	READ LONG	5.2.2.9
3F	WRITE LONG	5.2.2.10
56	RESERVE (10)	5.2.2.11
57	RELEASE (10)	5.2.2.12
55	MODE SELECT (10)	5.2.2.13
5A	MODE SENSE (10)	5.2.2.14

#### 5.2.2.1 Read Capacity Command (25H)

Table 5.2.2-2. Read Capacity Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	Logical Unit No. [1]						RelAdr [2]	
2	Logical Block Address (MSB)							[3]
3	Logical Block Address							[3]
4	Logical Block Address							[3]
5	Logical Block Address (LSB)							[3]
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	PMI [4]
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [5]

The Read Capacity command (Table 5.2.2-2) provides a means for the initiator to request the capacity of the disc drive information.

**Notes.**

[1] LUN must be zero.

[2] A relative address (RelAdr) bit of one indicates that the logical block address

[3] field is a two's complement displacement. This negative or positive displacement is to be added to the logical block address last accessed on the logical unit to form the logical block address for this command. This feature is only available when linking commands. The feature requires that a previous command in the linked group have accessed a block of data on the logical unit.

A RelAdr bit of zero indicates that the logical block address field specifies the first logical block of the range of logical blocks to be operated on by this command.

[4] A Partial Medium Indicator (PMI) bit of zero indicates the information returned in the Read Capacity data shall be the Logical BlockAddress and Block Length (in bytes) of the last logical block of the logical unit\*. The Logical BlockAddress in the Command Descriptor Block shall be set to zero for this option.

A PMI bit of one indicates the information returned shall be the Logical BlockAddress and Block Length (in bytes) of the last Logical BlockAddress after which a substantial delay (defined as approximately 1 millisecond for the typical disc drive) in data transfer is encountered. This returned Logical BlockAddress shall be greater than or equal to the Logical BlockAddress specified in the Command Descriptor Block. This reported Logical Block Address is cylinder boundary.

[5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

In response to the Read Capacity Command, the drive returns 8 bytes of Read Capacity Data to the host. The contents of the 8 bytes are listed in Table 5.2.2-2a.

**Table 5.2.2-2a. Read Capacity Data**

<b>Byte</b>	<b>Description</b>
0	LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS (MSB)
1	LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS
2	LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS
3	LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS (LSB)
4	BLOCK LENGTH (MSB)
5	BLOCK LENGTH
6	BLOCK LENGTH
7	BLOCK LENGTH (LSB)

\* This value is the same for all drives of the same model number, sector size and sparing scheme. It is the same regardless of the number of defective blocks the drive has.

## 5.2.2.2 Read Extended Command (28h)

Table 5.2.2-3. Read Extended Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0		0	DPO [2]	FUA [3]	0	0	RelAdr [4]
2	Logical Block Address (MSB)							[5]
3	Logical Block Address							[5]
4	Logical Block Address							[5]
5	Logical Block Address (LSB)							[5]
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	Transfer Length (MSB)							[6]
8	Transfer Length (LSB)							[6]
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [7]

The Read Command requests that the target transfer data to the initiator. This command is implemented with the drive specific parameters shown in Table 5.2.2-3.

This command operates the same as the Read command (see Section 5.2.1.4) except that in the CDB for this command a four byte Logical Block Address and a two byte Transfer Length may be specified.

The data value most recently written in the addressed logical block is returned to the Host.

This command shall be terminated with a Reservation Conflict status if any reservation access conflict (see Section 5.2.1.8) exists, and no data shall be read.

**Notes.**

[1] LUN must be zero.

[2] A disable page out (DPO) bit of one indicates that the disc drive shall assign the logical blocks accessed by this command the lowest priority for being fetched into or retained by the cache.

The DPO bit is used to control replacement of logical blocks in the cache memory when the host has information on the future usage of the logical blocks. If the DPO bit is set to one, the host knows the logical blocks accessed by the command are not likely to be accessed again in the near future and should not be put in the cache memory nor retained by the cache memory. If the DPO bit is zero, the host expects that logical blocks accessed by this command are likely to be accessed again in the near future.

[3] A force unit access (FUA) bit of one indicates that the target shall access the media in performing the command prior to returning GOOD status. Read commands shall access the specified logical blocks from the media (i.e., the data is not directly retrieved from the cache). The case where the cache contains a more recent version of a logical block than the media, the logical block shall first be written to the media. Write commands shall not return GOOD status until the logical blocks have actually been written on the media (i.e., the data is not write cached).

*continued from previous page*

An FUA bit of zero indicates that the target may satisfy the command by accessing the cache memory. For read operations, any logical blocks that are contained in the cache memory may be transferred to the initiator directly from the cache memory. For write operations, logical blocks may be transferred directly to the cache memory. GOOD status may be returned to the initiator prior to writing the logical blocks to the medium. Any error which occurs after the GOOD status is returned is a deferred error and information regarding the error is not reported until a subsequent command, assuming AEN is not enabled.

- [4] A relative address (RelAdr) bit of one indicates that the logical block address field is a two's complement displacement. This negative or positive displacement is to be added to the logical block address last accessed on the logical unit to form the logical block address for this command. This feature is only available when linking commands. The feature requires that a previous command in the linked group have accessed a block of data on the logical unit.

A RelAdr bit of zero indicates that the logical block address field specifies the first logical block of the range of logical blocks to be operated on by this command.

- [5] The Logical BlockAddress specifies the logical block at which the read operation shall begin, if RelAdr bit is zero (see description of RelAdr bit following).
- [6] The Transfer Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that no logical blocks shall be transferred (an Implied Seek is still performed). This condition shall not be considered an error. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be transferred.

- [7] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

If any of the following conditions occur, this command shall return a Check Condition status and the Sense Key shall be set as indicated. This table does not provide an exhaustive enumeration of all conditions that may cause the Check Condition status.

<b>Condition</b>	<b>Sense Key</b>
Invalid Logical Block Address	Illegal Request (see note)
Target reset since last command from this initiator	UnitAttention
Unrecovered read error	Medium Error
Recoverable read error	Recovered Error
Overrun or other error that might be resolved by repeating the command	Aborted Command

**Note.** The extended sense information bytes shall be set to the Logical Block Address of the first invalid address.

## 5.2.2.3 Write Extended Command (2Ah)

Table 5.2.2-4. Write Extended Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0		0	DPO [2]	FUA [3]	0	0	RelAdr [4]
2	Logical Block Address (MSB)							[5]
3	Logical Block Address							[5]
4	Logical Block Address							[5]
5	Logical Block Address (LSB)							[5]
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	Transfer Length (MSB)							[6]
8	Transfer Length (LSB)							
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [7]

The Write Extended command requests that the disc drive write to the medium the data transferred by the initiator.

This command is implemented with the disc drive specific parameters listed in Table 5.2.2-4. Refer also to "Write Caching" section in the individual Product Manual for information on Write Cache Control.

**Notes.**

- [1] In the CDB, the LUN must be zero.
- [2] If the Disable Page Out (DPO) bit is set to one, no data is cached. The DPO bit is only valid if the RCD bit of Mode Select Page 8 is set false (Caching enabled).
- [3] A force unit access (FUA) bit of one indicates that the write command shall not return GOOD status until the logical blocks have actually been written on the media. The FUA bit is only valid if the WCE bit of Mode Sense page 8 is true.
- [4] A relative address (RelAdr) bit of one indicates that the logical block address field is a two's complement displacement. This negative or positive displacement is to be added to the logical block address last accessed on the logical unit to form the logical block address for this command. This feature is only available when linking commands. The feature requires that a previous command in the linked group have accessed a block of data on the logical unit.

A RelAdr bit of zero indicates that the logical block address field specifies the first logical block of the range of logical blocks to be operated on by this command.

- [5] The Logical BlockAddress specifies the logical block at which the write operation shall begin, if RelAdr bit is zero. (see description of RelAdr bit).
- [6] The Transfer Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates no logical blocks shall be transferred (an Implied Seek is still performed). This condition shall not be considered an error and no data shall be written. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be transferred.

- [7] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.



This command operates the same as the Write command (Section 5.2.1.5) except that in the CDB for this command a four byte Logical Block Address and a two byte Transfer Length may be specified.

This command shall be terminated with a Reservation Conflict status if any reservation access conflict (see Section 5.2.1.8) exists, and no data shall be written.

If any of the following conditions occur, this command shall be terminated with a Check Condition status and the Sense Key shall be set as indicated in the following table. This table does not provide an exhaustive enumeration of all conditions that may cause the Check Condition status.

Condition	Sense Key
Invalid Logical Block Address	Illegal Request (see note)
Target reset since the last command from this initiator	Unit Attention
Overrun or other error that might be resolved by repeating the command	Aborted Command

**Note.** The extended sense information bytes shall be set to the Logical Block Address of the first invalid address.

#### 5.2.2.4 Seek Extended Command (2Bh)

Table 5.2.2-5a. Seek Extended Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			0	0	0	0	0
2	Logical Block Address (MSB)							[2]
3	Logical Block Address							[2]
4	Logical Block Address							[2]
5	Logical Block Address (LSB)							[2]
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [3]

The Seek Extended command requests that the disc drive seek to the specified Logical Block Address.

This command is implemented with the disc drive specific parameters listed in Table 5.2.2-5a

#### Notes.

[1] In the CDB, the LUN must be zero.

[2] This command operates the same as the Seek command (Section 5.2.1.6) except that a four byte Logical Block Address is specified.

[3] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

## 5.2.2.5 Write and Verify Command (2Eh)

Table 5.2.2-5b. Write and Verify Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			DPO 0 [2]	0	0	BYT CHK [3]	RelAdr [4]
2	Logical Block Address (MSB)							[5]
3	Logical Block Address							
4	Logical Block Address							
5	Logical Block Address (LSB)							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	Transfer Length (MSB)							[6]
8	Transfer Length (LSB)							
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [7]

The WRITEAND VERIFY command requests that the target write the data transferred from the initiator to the medium and then verify that the data is correctly written. The data is only transferred once from the initiator to the drive.

**Notes.**

- [1] The LUN must be zero.  
 [2] A disable page out (DPO) bit of one indicates that the target shall assign the logical blocks accessed by this command the lowest priority for being fetched into or retained by the cache.

The DPO bit is used to control replacement of logical blocks in the cache memory when the host has information on the future usage of the logical blocks. If the DPO bit is set to one, the logical blocks accessed by the command are not likely to be accessed again in the near future and should not be put in the cache memory nor retained by the cache memory. If the DPO bit is zero, that logical blocks accessed by this command are likely to be accessed again in the near future.

- [3] A byte check (BytChk) bit of zero causes the verification to be simply a medium verification (ECC) with no data comparison. A BytChk bit of one causes a byte-by-byte compare of data written on the peripheral device and the data transferred from the initiator. If the compare is unsuccessful, the command shall be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and the sense key shall be set to MISCOMPARE.  
 [4] RelAdr. See Description of RelAdr bit for the Write Extended Command.  
 [5] The logical block address specifies the logical block at which the write operation shall begin if RelAdr bit is zero. (see description of RelAdr bit for the Write Extended Command).  
 [6] The transfer length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A transfer length of zero indicates that no logical blocks shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error and no data shall be written. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be transferred.

For Systems that support disconnection, the disc drive disconnects during the execution of this command.

- [7] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

## 5.2.2.6 Verify Command (2Fh)

Table 5.2.2-6. Verify Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	
1	Logical Unit No. [1] 0 0		0	DPO 0 [2]		0	0	BYT CHK[3]	RelAdr [4]
2	Logical Block Address (MSB)							[5]	
3	Logical Block Address							[5]	
4	Logical Block Address							[5]	
5	Logical Block Address (LSB)							[5]	
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
7	Verification Length (MSB)							[6]	
8	Verification Length (LSB)							[6]	
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [7]	

The Verify command requests that the target verify the data written on the medium.

This command is implemented with the disc drive specific parameters listed in Table 5.2.2-6.

The drive disconnects while this command is being executed if the initiator supports disconnect/reconnect.

**Notes.**

[1] LUN must be zero.

[2] A disable page out (DPO) bit of one indicates that the target shall assign the logical blocks accessed by this command the lowest priority for being fetched into or retained by the cache.

The DPO bit is used to control replacement of logical blocks in the cache memory when the host has information on the future usage of the logical blocks. If the DPO bit is set to one, the logical blocks accessed by the command are not likely to be accessed again in the near future and should not be put in the cache memory nor retained by the cache memory. If the DPO bit is zero, that logical blocks accessed by this command are likely to be accessed again in the near future.

[3] A Byte Check (BytChk) bit of zero causes the verification to be simply a medium verification (CRC, ECC, etc). A BytChk bit of one causes a byte by byte compare of data on the medium and the data transferred from the initiator. If the compare is unsuccessful, the command shall be terminated with a Check Condition status and the Sense Key shall be set to Miscompare.

[4] RelAdr: See description of RelAdr bit for Write Extended command.

[5] The Logical Block Address specifies the logical block at which the verify operation shall begin, if RelAdr is Zero.

[6] The Verification Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be verified. A Verification Length of zero indicates that no logical blocks shall be verified (an Implied Seek is still performed). This condition shall not be considered an error. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be verified.

[7] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

## 5.2.2.7 Synchronize Cache Command (35h)

Table 5.2.2-7. Synchronize Cache Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	i	i	0	i	0	i
1	Logical Unit No. [1]			Reserved			Immed [2]	RelAdr [3]
2 : 5	(MSB) _____ Logical Block Address							[4] _____ (LSB)
6	Reserved							
7 : 8	(MSB) _____ Number of Blocks							[5] _____ (LSB)
9	Control							[6]

The Synchronize Cache command (Table 5.2.2-7) ensures that logical blocks in the cache memory, within the specified range, have their most recent data value recorded on the physical medium. If a more recent data value for a logical block within the specified range exists in the cache memory than on the physical medium, then the logical block from the cache memory shall be written to the physical medium. Logical blocks are not necessarily removed from the cache memory as a result of the synchronize cache operation.

[1] LUN must be zero.

[2] An immediate (Immed) bit of one indicates that the drive shall return status as soon as the command descriptor block has been validated. An Immed bit of zero indicates that the status shall not be returned until the operation has been completed. If the Immed bit is one and the target does not support it and the command shall terminate with CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code shall be set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

[3] See paragraph 5.2.2.9 note [3] for definition of RELADR bit.

[4] The Logical block address field specifies the logical block at which the Synchronize Cache operation begins.

[5] The number of blocks field specifies the total number of contiguous logical blocks within the range. A number of blocks of zero indicates that all remaining logical blocks on the logical unit shall be within the range.

A logical block within the specified range that is not in cache memory is not considered an error. Multiple locks may be in effect from more than one initiator. Locks from different initiators may overlap. An unlock of an overlapped area does not release the lock of another initiator.

[6] See section 4.2.6.

## 5.2.2.8 Read Defect Data Command (37h)

Table 5.2.2-8a. Read Defect Data Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			0	0	0	0	0
2	0 0 0			P	G	Defect List Format 1 0 0 [3] or 1 0 1		
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	Allocation Length (MSB)							[4]
8	Allocation Length (LSB)							[4]
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link[5]

The Read Defect Data command requests that the target transfer the medium defect data to the initiator. If the drive is unable to access any medium defect data, it terminates the command with Check Condition status. The sense key is set to either Medium Error if a medium error occurred or No Sense if the list does not exist and the additional Sense Code is set to DEFECT LIST NOT FOUND.

This command is implemented with the disc drive specific parameters listed in Table 5.2.2-8a.

**Notes.**

[1] LUN must be zero.

[2] The disc drive interprets the P and G bits (bits 4 and 3 of byte 2 of the CDB) as follows:

Bit P	Bit G	
0	0 (1)	Return Defect List header only
0	1 (2)	Return the growth "G" list only.
1	0 (3)	Return the manufacturers original ETF list only.
1	1 (4)	Return all lists.

- (1) Target returns only the defect List header.
- (2) This list reflects the grown or "G" list as defined in Section 5.2.1.2.
- (3) This list reflects the manufacturers original ETF list. These defects may or may not have been reallocated, depending on the last Format command received (the last format may or may not have requested the P list flaws be reallocated during the format function).
- (4) The returned list contains all of the requested drive's defect lists (i.e. P, G, C & D) regardless of whether these lists have been reallocated by the drive.

*continued from previous page*

- [3] The Defect List format field indicates the defect data format preferred by the initiator. The meaning is the same as the Defect List Format field in the Format command (indicated in Table 5.2.1-3)

The Defect List format bits (bits 2, 1, 0 in the CDB) should be; 1 0 0, respectively, to signify a defect list in the Bytes from Index format, or, 1 0 1, respectively to signify a defect list in the Physical Sector format. If neither of these two, the disc drive responds with the defect list in the drives default format (physical sector) and create the check condition status with Recovered Error Sense Key [1h] and additional sense error code 1C at the end of the Read Defect Data transfer.

- [4] Allocation Length specifies the number of bytes the initiator has allocated for the returned defect data. An Allocation Length of zero indicates that no Read Defect Data shall be transferred. Any other value indicates the maximum number of bytes to be transferred. The disc drive shall terminate the Data In phase when the Allocation Length bytes have been transferred or when all available defect data has been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

- [5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

This command is intended to be used only with the Format Unit command (Section 5.2.1.2). The initiator should not interpret or act upon this list except to resend this list as defect data in a Format Unit command. It is not possible to relate actual physical locations to logical block addresses that are given in connection with other commands.

The format Defect Data header and Defect Data Descriptor bytes returned are shown in Table 5.2.2-8b.

The first 4 bytes returned are the Defect List Header. The P bit, G bit, and Defect List Format fields indicate the defect format actually returned by the disc drive. The definitions are the same as for byte 2 of the Read Defect Data Command Descriptor Block (Table 5.2.2-8a).

The Defect List Length specifies the total length in bytes of all the defect descriptors available from the disc drive. If the Allocation Length of the CDB is too small to transfer all of the defect descriptors, the Defect List Length is not adjusted to reflect the truncation. The drive does not create the CHECK CONDITION status. The Defect Descriptors are not required to be in ascending order.

Table 5.2.2-8b. Defect List Header Description

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0							
1	Reserved 0 0		P [1]		G	Defect List Format 1 0 0 [2] or 1 0 1		
2	Defect List Length (MSB) (Value is 8 Times the Number of Defects)							
3	Defect List Length (LSB)							[3]
4-n	Defect Descriptor Bytes							[3]

[1] Either 00, 01, 10, or 11 as previously defined in note [1] of Table 5.2.2-8a.

[2] 100 defines a list in the Bytes from Index format.  
101 defines a list in the Physical Sector format.

[3] If the P, G bits were 0,0 the Defect List length will be zero and no Defect Descriptor Bytes are sent to the initiator. See Tables 5.2.1-6e and 5.2.1-6f for format of Defect Descriptor Bytes.

5.2.2.9 Read Long Command (3Eh)

Table 5.2.2-9. Read Long Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0			0	0	0	COR- RCT [2]	RelAdr [3]
2	Logical Block Address (MSB)							[4]
3	Logical Block Address							[4]
4	Logical Block Address							[4]
5	Logical Block Address (LSB)							[4]
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	Byte Transfer Length (MSB)							[5]
8	Byte Transfer Length (LSB)							[5]
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [6]

The Read Long command (see Table 5.2.2-9) requests that the target transfers data to the initiator. The data passed during the Read Long command shall include the data bytes, followed by the ECC bytes of the single logical block addressed by the command.

**Notes.**

- [1] In the CDB, the LUN must be zero.
- [2] A corrected (CORRECT) bit of zero causes a logical block to be read without any correction made by the target. A CORRECT bit of one causes the data to be corrected by ECC, if necessary, before being transferred to the initiator.
- [3] A relative address (RelAdr) bit of one indicates that the logical block address field is a two's complement displacement. This negative or positive displacement is to be added to the logical block address last accessed on the logical unit to form the logical block address for this command. This feature is only available when linking commands. The feature requires that a previous command in the linked group have accessed a block of data on the logical unit.  
  
A RelAdr bit of zero indicates that the logical block address field specifies the first RelAdr logical block of the range of logical blocks to be operated on by this command.
- [4] The logical block address specifies the logical block at which the read operation shall occur. The most recent data written in the addressed logical block shall be returned.
- [5] The byte transfer length specifies the number of bytes of data that shall be transferred. A transfer length of zero indicates that no bytes shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error. The byte transfer length requested must be equal to the current block size plus all ECC bytes for a data transfer to occur. If an incorrect number of bytes is stated in the command block, this command terminates with a "Check Condition" status. The correct number of bytes can be determined from the information returned in the extended sense data bytes after issuing the Request Sense command. The Request Sense command shall result in the "Illegal Field In CDB" condition with the "Illegal Request" Sense Key. The extended sense ILI bit shall be set. The extended sense information bytes contain the difference (residue) of the requested length minus the actual length in bytes. (Negative values are indicated by two's complement notation).
- [6] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.



## 5.2.2.10 Write Long Command (3FH)

Table 5.2.2-10. Write Long Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	Logical Unit No.[1] 0 0 0						RelAdr [2] 0 0	
2	Logical Block Address (MSB)							3]
3	Logical Block Address							[3]
4	Logical Block Address							[3]
5	Logical Block Address (LSB)							[3]
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	Byte Transfer Length (MSB)							[4]
8	Byte Transfer Length (LSB)							[4]
9	0	0	0	0	0	0	Flag	Link [5]

The Write Long Command (see 5.2.2-10) requests that the target write to the medium the data transferred by the initiator. The data passed during the Write Long Command shall include the data bytes and all ECC bytes to be written to the single logical block addressed in the command. The Read Long command is usually issued before issuing a Write Long command. The Write Long data passed must be in the same order and must be the same number of bytes as the Read Long command.

**Notes.**

[1] LUN must be zero.

[2] and [3]

A relative address (RelAdr) bit of one indicates that the logical block address field [3] is a two's complement displacement. This negative or positive displacement is to be added to the logical block address last accessed on the logical unit to form the logical block address for this command. This feature is only available when linking commands. The feature requires that a previous command in the linked group have accessed a block of data on the logical unit.

A RelAdr bit of zero indicates that the logical block address field specifies the logical block at which the write operation shall occur.

[4] The byte transfer length specifies the number of bytes of data that shall be transferred. A transfer length of zero indicates that no bytes shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error. The byte transfer length requested must be equal to the current block size plus all ECC bytes for a data transfer to occur. If an incorrect number of bytes is stated in the command block, this command terminates with a "Check Condition" status. The correct number of bytes can be determined from the information returned in the extended sense data bytes after issuing the Request Sense command. The Request Sense command shall result in the "Illegal Field In CDB" Condition with the "Illegal Request" Sense Key. The extended sense ILI bit shall be set. The extended sense information bytes contain the difference (residue) of the requested length minus the actual length in bytes. (Negative values are indicated by two's complement notation).

[5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

### 5.2.2.11 Reserve (10) command (56h)

The RESERVE and RELEASE commands provide the basic mechanism for contention resolution in multiple-initiator systems. The RESERVE (10) command (Table 5.2.2-11) is used to reserve a logical unit or, if the extent reservation option is implemented, extents within a logical unit. The third-party reservation allows logical units or extents to be reserved for another specified SCSI device.

Table 5.2.2-11. Reserve (10) Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (56h)							
1	Logical Unit No. [1] 0 0		0	3rdPty [2]	Reserved			Extent [3]
2	Reservation Identification							[4]
3	Third Party Device ID							[2]
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	(MSB)							
8	Extent List Length [3]						(LSB)	
9	Contol							[5]

**Notes:**

- [1] The Logical Unit Number must be zero.
- [2] If bit 4 is zero, byte 2 must also be zero.  
If bit 4 is one, byte 2 identifies the SCSI bus ID of the device for which the drive is reserved.
- [3] Must be zero if not supported by the drive. See drive Product Manual.
- [4] Must be zero if not supported by the drive. See drive Product Manual.
- [5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

For additional information about the fields of this command see section 5.2.1.8.

### 5.2.2.12 Release (10) Command (57h)

The RESERVE and RELEASE commands provide the basic mechanism for contention resolution in multiple-initiator systems. The RELEASE command (Table 5.2.2-12) is used to release a previously reserved logical unit, or, if the extent release option is implemented, to release previously reserved extents within a logical unit. It is not an error for an initiator to attempt to release a reservation that is not currently valid. In this case, the drive shall return GOOD status without altering any other reservation.

Table 5.2.2-12. Release (10) Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (57h)							
1	Logical Unit No. [1] 0        0        0			3rdPty [2]	Reserved			Extent 0 [3]
2	Reservation Identification							[4]
3	Third Party Device ID							[2]
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Reserved							
9	Control Byte							[5]

**Notes:**

[1] The Logical Unit Number must be ZERO.

[2] If bit 4 is zero, bits 3, 2, and 1 are zeros. If bit 4 is one, bits 3, 2, and 1 identify the SCSI bus ID of the device that reserves the drive.

[3] Must be zero

[4] Must be zero if not supported. Check with drive Product Manual, "SCSI Interface commands supported" section (see paragraph 5.2.1.8.1).

[5] See "Control Byte" paragraph 4.2.6.

For additional explanation about the Release Command, see section 5.2.1.9.

### 5.2.2.13 Mode Select (10) Command (55h)

The MODE SELECT (10) command provides a means for the initiator to send a list of drive operating mode parameters to the drive. See the MODE SELECT command (section 5.2.1.7) for a description of the fields in this command. Initiators should issue MODE SENSE prior to MODE SELECT to determine supported pages, page lengths, and other parameters.

Table 5.2.2-13. Mode Select (10) Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
1	Logical Unit No.			PF	Reserved			SP
2	Reserved							
3								
4								
5								
6								
7	(MSB) _____							
8	Parameter List Length							(LSB)
9	Control							

### 5.2.2.14 Mode Sense (10) Command (5Ah)

The MODE SENSE (10) command provides a means for the drive to report drive operating mode parameters to the initiator. It is a complementary command to the MODE SELECT (10) command. See the MODE SENSE command (Section 5.2.1.10) for a description of the fields in this command.

Table 5.2.2-14. Mode Sense (10) Command

Bit Byte(s)	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0
1	Logical Unit No.			Rsvd	DBD	Reserved		
2	PC		Page Code					
3	Reserved							
4								
5								
6								
7	(MSB) _____							
8	Allocation Length							(LSB)
9	Control							

## 6.0 Error recovery philosophy

The error recovery procedures for the disc drive vary in accordance with parameter values and the states of "flags" stored in error recovery parameter storage locations in disc drive control memory. The disc drive control firmware error recovery routines reference these parameters for decision making when an error recovery procedure is performed. Most of these error recovery parameters are changeable by commands from the initiator. The parameters are flagged as being changeable and this information is given to the initiator when requested by a Mode Sense command. The error recovery parameters can be changed by a Mode Select command from the initiator. Table 6.0-1 lists the error recovery parameters. More details, on how these functions operate, are given in Sections 5.2.1.7 and 5.2.1.10.

Table 6.0-1. Error Recovery Parameters

Changeability Indicator**	Parameter Name	Value	Description of Parameter	
	AWRE	1	1 or 0*	Automatic Write Reallocation Enable
	ARRE	1	1 or 0*	Automatic Read Reallocation Enable
	TB	1	1 or 0*	Transfer (failed data) Block
	RC	1	1 or 0*	Read Continuous (no recovery actions)
	EER	1	1 or 0*	Enable Early Recovery (ECC correction to occur early)
	PER	1	1 or 0*	Post Error (report to initiator)
	DTE	1	1 or 0*	Disable data Transfer on Recovered Error
	DCR	1	1 or 0*	Disable ECC application
	Retry cnt	1	0 - 27	Maximum times for read retry algorithm
	Correction Span	0	***	Largest error span for ECC use (bits)

\* Typically, default value is 0 which means disable. See individual Product Manual.

\*\* 1 means is changeable, 0 means not changeable

\*\*\* Product dependent. See drive Product Manual Mode Sense Value for Mode Page 1 (Error Recovery parameters), byte 04.

In general, when a read error occurs, the disc drive attempts to recover using retries, application of ECC and/or early application of ECC (if these are enabled). If the error still exists, the disc drive reports Check Condition in the status returned to the initiator. The initiator can send a Request Sense command and the disc drive replies with a Data In phase with 18 bytes of Extended Sense Data that contains information about the error. Sense Key codes used and their meanings are listed in Table 5.1.1-5. Error codes used and the errors they report are listed in Table 5.1.1-6. If the error is recovered, it is reported only if the PER bit is set (Table 6.0-1). Error recovery procedures for several of the error conditions are defined in Sections 6.1 through 6.5.

### 6.1 Seek Errors (09h or 15h Error Code)

If a seek error occurs, up to three retries are attempted by positioning the heads to track zero and reissuing the seek. If all retries fail error code 09h or 15h are reported in the Extended Sense Data.

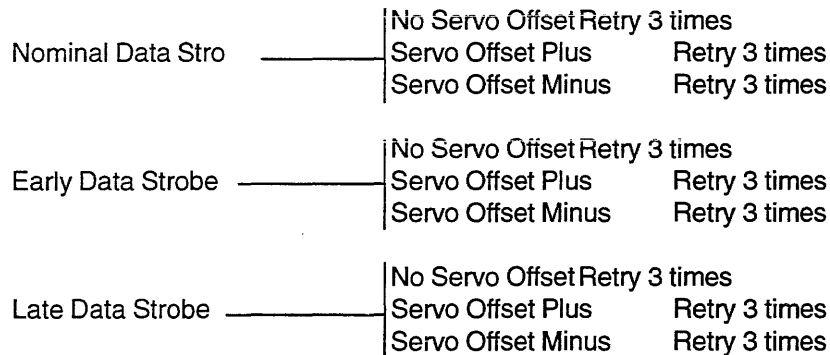
### 6.2 Data Field Write Fault (03h Error Code)

If a write fault is detected while writing the data field the operation is immediately suspended. If the internal write fault can be cleared, the drive automatically performs a rewrite of the sector (up to 3 attempts are made to clear the write fault and rewrite the sector).

If the write fault condition cannot be cleared the "Write Fault" error (03h) is reported in extended Sense Data.

### 6.3 Sync Byte Error (12h Error Code)

If the sync byte cannot be recovered during a read, up to 27 retries are attempted using the offset and data strobe combinations shown in Figure 6.3-1.



**Figure 6.3-1. Possible Data Strobe and Servo Offset Combinations used by the SCSI drive during Read Retries**

### 6.4 Data Field ECC Error (11h or 18h Error Code)

If EER bit is one (Table 5.2.1-22), software ECC correction is applied as soon as possible. If EER bit is zero data field software ECC error correction is not applied until all retry attempts (per Figure 6.3-1) are exhausted and if specified by DCR bit and Retry Count (Table 5.2.1-22). If the ECC error persists and is within the correction span being used the data is corrected and sent to the initiator if that capability is enabled by DTE bit (Table 5.2.1-22). Data correction by ECC does not occur unless two ECC syndrome matches occur. For unrecoverable ECC errors a request sense error code of 11h is reported.

## 6.5 Alternate Sector Processing

Any media defect detected during formatting or listed internally in the factory recorded defect table has been assigned an alternate sector in an area not directly accessible by the initiator. If conditions are appropriate, the initiator may want to call for a complete reformatting of the disc drive. The options available when that is done are discussed in Section 5.2.1.2.

**Note.** If the drive has user data on it, all user data is lost when the drive is reformatted.

If Automatic Read Reallocation (ARRE) is disabled, the initiator should request that media errors (that occur after formatting) be reassigned using a Reassign Blocks command.

If Automatic Read Reallocation (ARRE) is enabled, read errors that require more than 1 retry to recover or read errors that require ECC correction to recover are automatically reallocated by the drive. First, however, if the sector passes all of the requirements of the ARRE for being reallocated (recoverable, etc.), the drive attempts to rewrite the sector to see if the error is corrected. After the sector is rewritten, the drive reads one more time and if no error, then no reallocation is performed. The initiator should still use the Reassign Blocks command to reallocate unrecoverable sectors.

If Automatic Write Reallocation (AWRE) is disabled, the drive reports a No Record Found status if a header cannot be recovered. The initiator should request that bad sector(s) be reallocated using the Reassign Blocks command and then rewrite the record.

If Automatic Write Reallocation (AWRE) is enabled, the drive automatically reallocates the sector and rewrites the data field if a header cannot be recovered. The initiator should not use the Reassign Blocks command or rewrite the sectors if AWRE is a 1 and it receives a Record Not Found status.





## 7.0 Technical support service

Seagate Technology provides technical support literature and diagnostic utilities to Authorized Distributors. Please contact your dealer for technical support and installation troubleshooting. Product Technical Support is available for all Seagate products by calling the SeaFAX, SeaFONE, SeaTDD or SeaBOARD services. These are toll calls.

### **SeaFAX: 408/438-2620**

You can use a Touch-Tone telephone to access Seagate's automated FAX delivery system and select technical support information by return FAX. This service is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

### **SeaFONE: 408/438-8222**

The enhanced phone system provides recorded technical information on selected Seagate products while you are on hold. Technical support specialists are available to answer questions from 8:00 AM to 5:00 PM PST, Monday through Friday. Recordings are accessible 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

### **SeaTDD: 408/438-5382**

TDD is a Telecommunication Device for the Deaf where two people can communicate using a keyboard that is connected to the phone line. A TDD device is required to access this service. This service is available from 8:00 AM to 5:00 PM PST, Monday through Friday.

### **SeaBOARD:**

The Seagate Technical Support Bulletin Board System (BBS) is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. A modem is required to access this service. The communications software must be set for eight data bits, no parity and one stop bit (8N1).

With this service you can access:

- Specifications and jumper configurations for all Seagate products.
- Reprints of Seagate documentation.
- A directory of information and helpful utilities that you can download to your own computer.

<b>BBS Location</b>	<b>Modem Number</b>	<b>Maximum Baud Rate</b>
United States	408-438-8771	9600
England	44-62-847-8011	9600
Germany	49-89-140-9331	2400
Singapore	65-227-2217	9600
Australia	61-2-756-2359	9600

### Seagate Peripheral Family

Listed below are some of the SEAGATE Peripheral family members. For specific information on each member, refer to the appropriate documents.

Model Name	Model Number	Product Manual	Interface	Unformatted Capacity
ST11200 Family	ST11200N/ND	77738476(I)	SCSI-2	1248*
	ST1980N/ND	77738476(I)	SCSI-2	1021*
	ST1981N/ND	77767455(I)	SCSI-2	1021*
ST12400 Family	ST12400N/ND/NC	77767450(I)	SCSI-2	2537*
	ST11900N/ND/NC	77767450(I)	SCSI-2	2003*
ST12400 Wide Family	ST12400W/WD/WC	77767457(I)	SCSI-2	2537*
ST11950 Family	ST11950N/ND	83327780(I)	SCSI-2	2030*
	ST11950W/WD	83327780(I)	SCSI-2	2030*
ST12450 Wide Family	ST12450W/WD	83328900(I)	SCSI-2	2437
ST12550 Family	ST12550N/ND	83327780(I)	SCSI-2	2572*
ST12550 Wide Family	ST12550W/WD	83327780(I)	SCSI-2	2572*
ST15150 Family	ST15150N/ND	83328880(I)	SCSI-2	4880*
ST15150 Wide Family	ST15150W/WD	83328880(I)	SCSI-2	4880*
ST3600 Family	ST3500N	77738477(I)	SCSI-2	502
	ST3600N	77738477(I)	SCSI-2	617
	ST3610N/ND/NC	77738477(I)	SCSI-2	635*
	ST3600A	77738485	AT (IDE)	617
ST31200 Family	ST31200N/ND	77767452(I)	SCSI-2	1258*
ST31200 Wide Family	ST31200W/WD/WC	77767461(I)	SCSI-2	1258*
SCSI Interface Manual		77765466 (II)**	SCSI-2	N/A**
SCSI Interface Manual; Ver. 2		77738479 (II)**	SCSI-2	N/A**

\* Product Manual covers both Single-Ended and Differential Interfaces.

\*\* Interface Manual for several different Product Manuals (Volume II of 2 Volume set).

*continued from previous page*

<b>Model Name</b>	<b>Model Number</b>	<b>Product Manual</b>	<b>Interface</b>	<b>Unformatted Capacity</b>
WREN 5 Family	ST4442E	77765300	ESDI	442 (15 Hd, 1412 Cyl)
	ST4383E	77765300	ESDI	383 (13 Hd, 1412 Cyl)
	ST4384E	77765300	ESDI	383 (15 Hd, 1224 Cyl)
	ST4702N	77765336	SCSI	702
	ST4385ND/702ND	77765366	SCSI	385, 702 (Dif. I/O)
	ST4385N	77765378	SCSI	385 (15 Hd, 791 Cyl)
WREN 6 Family	ST4766N/ND	77765353	SCSI	766 (Dif. I/O)*
	ST4766E	77765358	ESDI	766, 383
WREN 6 HH Family	ST2383N/502N	77765414	SCSI-1	383, 502
	ST2274A/383A	77765393	AT (IDE)	274, 383
	ST2182E/383E	77765369	ESDI	182, 383
WREN 7 Family	ST41200N/ND	77765417	SCSI	1200*
	ST41200N/ND	77765374	SCSI-2	1200*
WREN 8 Family	ST41650N	77765470 (I)	SCSI-2	1650
	ST41651N/ND	77738474 (I)	FAST SCSI-2	1650*
WREN 9 Family	ST42100N	77738475 (I)	FAST SCSI-2	2200
WRENRNR-2 Family	ST4767N	77765445 (I)	SCSI-2	767 (Fast Access)
	ST4767E/769E	77765457	ESDI	767
ST1480 Family	ST1400N,	77765458(I)	SCSI-2	383
	ST1401N,	77765458(I)	SCSI-2	390
	ST1480N	77765458(I)	SCSI-2	492
	ST1481N	77738471(I)	SCSI-2	492
	ST1581N	77738471(I)	SCSI-2	610
	ST1480A	77738463	AT (IDE)	490
	ST1400A	77738463	AT (IDE)	381
	ST1401A	77738463	AT (IDE)	395







**Seagate Technology, Inc.**  
**920 Disc Drive, Scotts Valley, California 95066-4544, USA**

*Publication Number: 77738479, Rev. C (10/93)*

*Printed in USA*